

SureMark Printers



User's Guide

SureMark Printers



User's Guide

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read "Safety information" on page xi and the general information under Appendix G, "Notices," on page 195.

Sixth Edition (April 2003)

This edition applies to models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6 of the IBM SureMark Printers.

Order publications through your IBM representative or the IBM branch office serving your locality. Publications are not stocked at the address given below.

A form for reader's comments is also provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, address your comments to:

IBM Corporation, Information Development, Department CJMA
PO Box 12195
Research Triangle Park, North Carolina, 27709 USA

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute whatever information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1997, 2004. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Preface	ix
Who should read this manual	ix
How this manual is organized	ix
Related publications and diskettes	x
Where to find more information	x
Tell us what you think	x
Safety information	xi
End of life disposal	xviii

Summary of Changes	xix
Web-only update for corrections to GA27-4151-05 (August 2004)	xix
Web-only update for corrections to GA27-4151-05 (August 2003)	xix
Web-only update for Model TI8, GA27-4151-05 (April 2003)	xix
Web-only update for GA27-4151-04 (March 2002)	xix
Web update for GA27-4151-04 (June 2001)	xix
GA27-4151-04	xix
GA27-4151-03	xx
GA27-4151-02	xxi

Figures	xxiii
--------------------------	-------

Tables	xxv
-------------------------	-----

Part 1. General information 1

Chapter 1. Introduction	3
Printer overview	3
Description of models	4
Features used with the SureMark printers	6
Comparison of the SureMark models	7
Planning information	8
Your responsibilities	8
Limitations	9
Communication interfaces	9
Temperature and humidity limits	9
Physical dimensions	9
Power requirements	12
Hardware requirements	12
Software requirements	13
Resident code pages	14
Bar codes	14

Chapter 2. Installation instructions	17
Unpacking the printer	17
Installing the SureMark printers	18
Installing for RS-232/RS-485 communication	18
Installing SureMark for USB communication	21
Using the wall mounting feature	24
Installing the fillers	25
Installing fillers for RS-232/RS-485 printers	25
Installing fillers for USB printers	27
RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except TI8	29
Baud rate selection	29

	RS-232 communications protocol selection	29
I	RS-232 communication mode selections — Model TI8	32
I	Baud rate selection	32
	USB communication mode	33
	USB selection	33
	Chapter 3. SureMark installation, service, and utility software	35
	Software adjustments (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	35
	Using IBM Point-of-Sale device diagnostics	35
	Using the reference/service diskettes (RS-485 or RS-232 printers)	36
	4610 Fonts and Logos utility diskette	38
	Proportional font conversion utility	38
	Firmware update	38
	Using a firmware update diskette	39
	Using POSS for Windows to update SureMark printer firmware (RS-485 and USB only)	39
	IBM Point-of-Sale device diagnostics	40
	Updating SureMark firmware using temporary RS-232 attachment	40
	Limitation on updating firmware	41
	Emulating the IBM Model 3 or Model 4 printers	41
	Enabling emulation using utility diskettes	41
	Limitations for emulation	42
	Printing saved data	42
	Emulating an Epson single-station printer (single-station only)	43
	Enabling Epson emulation	43
	Limitations for Epson emulation	44
	MICR data parser sample code (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)	44
	Resources on the Internet	44
	<hr/>	
	Part 2. Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4.	45
	Chapter 4. Operation (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	47
	Operating controls and indicators	47
	Ribbon loading	51
	Paper loading	53
	Clearing jams in the check flipper area	55
	MICR read head cleaning	57
I	Thermal printhead cleaning	58
I	Document scanner cleaning (Model TI8)	58
	Document scanner calibration (Model TI8)	59
	Chapter 5. Testing and problem analysis (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	61
	Testing the printer	61
	Offline tests	62
	Customer receipt test	62
	Document insert test	62
	MICR reader and check flipper test (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)	64
I	RS-232 hex dump	66
I	Resetting the printer - offline	66
	Electronic journal dump	66
	Problem determination	66
	<hr/>	
	Part 3. Models TF6 and TM6	69

Chapter 6. Operation (Models TF6 and TM6)	71
Operating controls and indicators	71
Paper loading	71
Thermal printhead cleaning	73
Chapter 7. Testing and problem analysis (Models TF6 and TM6)	75
Testing the printer	75
Offline test	76
RS-232 hex dump	77
Resetting the printer - offline	78
Problem determination	78
Appendix A. Consumable supplies	79
Paper specifications	79
Thermal paper	79
Document insert forms (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)	80
Print ribbons (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)	80
MICR reader read head cleaning cards (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)	81
Appendix B. Technical information	83
General description	83
Specifications	83
Memory units	85
Immediate commands	85
Voltage conversion circuitry	85
RS-485 serial I/O parameters	86
Cash drawer connector pin assignments	86
RS-232 connector pin assignments	86
RS-232 parameters	87
USB connector pin assignments	87
Code page definitions	88
Generic code page	89
Code page 437	90
Code page 858	91
Code page 860	92
Code page 863	93
Code page 865	94
Character fonts	94
Thermal printing font	94
Impact printing fonts (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	95
Appendix C. RS-232 programming information	97
RS-232 commands summary by function	100
Alphabetized RS-232 commands summary	105
System commands	109
Exercise program	109
Verify previous commands completed	109
Status request	109
Extended address command-request printer ID	109
Preset or Onetime-Set commands	111
All models	111
Model TI8 only	111
Download graphics (logo) Commands	112
Predefine messages	114
Download user-defined characters	116
Thermal code page	116

Proportional font	117
Impact code page	119
Flash storage write	120
Erase flash EPROM sector	121
Send checksum of flash EPROM sector	121
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading	122
Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading (Model TI8 only)	122
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request	123
Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request (Model TI8 only)	126
Setup commands	127
Set print mode	127
Set or cancel double-wide mode	128
Set or cancel double-high mode	128
Set or cancel underline mode	129
Set or cancel overline mode	129
Set or cancel invert mode	129
Set or cancel emphasized printing	129
Set or cancel high-quality print mode	130
Set or cancel unidirectional printing	130
Set print station	131
Select user-defined or resident character sets	131
Set code page	131
Set inter-character spacing	132
Set or cancel rotated characters	132
Set print station parameters.	133
Select 1/8-inch line spacing	133
Select 1/6-inch line spacing	133
Select color printing.	134
Set line spacing using minimum units	134
Set sheet eject length	135
Set horizontal tab positions	135
Set left margin position	136
Set relative position.	136
Align positions.	137
Set error recovery function	137
Define document wait time	138
Status sent to system	139
Select character for reprinted lines	139
Reinitialize the printer	139
Enable or disable the feed buttons (Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)	140
Enable or disable the beeper (Models TF6 and TM6 only)	141
Enable or disable upside-down printing	142
Select character size for scalable fonts	142
Fix font matrix.	143
Print logo inline	143
Select thermal paper	144
Bar code commands	144
Print bar code.	145
Select horizontal size of bar code	148
Select bar code height	148
Select printing position of human readable information (HRI)	148
Select font for HRI	149
Print PDF417 bar code	149
Select PDF417 ECC (error correction codewords) level	149
Select aspect ratio PDF417 bar code	150

Enable PDF417 truncation	151
Print character commands	151
Print and line feed	151
Print and line feed	151
Print, form feed, and cut the paper (FF)	151
Print and feed paper n lines.	152
Print and feed paper using minimum units	152
Print graphic messages	152
Select and print a graphics (logo) command.	152
Print predefined graphics (logo) command	154
Print predefined messages	155
Miscellaneous commands	155
Tab to next tab stop	155
Return home (select printhead location)	155
Paper cut/DI eject	156
Generate drive pulse for cash drawer	156
Retrieve the flash storage	156
Retrieve size of user flash storage	157
Retrieve printer usage statistics	157
Check processing commands (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)	158
Model TI8 read commands	158
MICR read	159
Flip check	160
Asynchronous (real-time) commands	161
Real-time requests	161
Data buffer management and batch printing	162
Reset line count	162
Disable line count	162
Hold printing until buffer is released	162
Document handling	163
Portrait mode	163
Landscape mode	164
Status summary	165
Message from the printer.	165
Status byte 1	166
Status byte 2	166
Status byte 3	167
Status byte 4	167
Status byte 5	167
Status byte 6	167
Status byte 7	168
Status byte 8	168
Document scanner commands.	169
Start scan	169
Print scanned image	170
Store scanned image	171
Retrieve scanned image	175
Scanner calibration	176
Retrieve next image location	176
Retrieve first unread image location.	176
Select compression format and scanned image threshold.	177
Page mode printing commands	178
Select page mode	178
Select standard mode	178
Select printable area	179
Select printing direction/position	179

|	Set vertical position	180
|	Set relative vertical position	180
|	Set left margin position (standard mode), set absolute print position (page	
|	mode)	181
|	Set relative horizontal position	182
|	Set printing position	182
|	Print and form feed and cut the paper	183
|	Print page in page mode	183
|	Clear print data in page mode	183

Appendix D. Uploading electronic journal data	185
Enable the upload of EJ data	185
Disable the upload of EJ data	185
Upload the EJ data	185
Request the size of the EJ space	186
Erase the EJ data in the printer	186

Appendix E. Proportional fonts	187
Preparing the fonts	187
Implementing proportional fonts	187
Layout using align commands	187
Layout using set tab position	188

Appendix F. Emulation support for Epson single-station printer	191
Commands supported in emulation mode	191
Commands with limited support in emulation mode	193
Commands not supported in emulation mode	194
Connectivity differences	194

Appendix G. Notices	195
Electronic emission notices	195
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statement	195
Industry Canada Class A Emission Compliance Statement	195
Avis de conformité aux normes d'Industrie Canada	195
European Union (EU) Mark of Conformity Statement	196
Japanese Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) Statement	197
Korean Communications Statement	197
Chinese Class A warning statement	197
Taiwanese Class A Warning Statement	197
Australia / New Zealand Compliance Statement	198
Trademarks	198

Index	199
------------------------	------------

Preface

This manual assists you with installation, testing, and problem determination of IBM SureMark™ Printers.

Who should read this manual

This manual is intended for use by persons who are installing, testing, or programming an IBM SureMark Printer. The manual should also be used for problem determination on the printer.

How this manual is organized

Part 1, "General information," on page 1 contains information that applies to SureMark printers in general:

- Chapter 1, "Introduction" – provides an overview of the features and options of the SureMark printers.
- Chapter 2, "Installation instructions" – provides information on installing the SureMark printers.
- Chapter 3, "SureMark installation, service, and utility software" – provides information about using SureMark utilities to setup or modify your system configuration.

Part 2, "Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4," on page 45 contains information that is specific to the thermal/impact SureMark printers:

- Chapter 4, "Operation (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)" – provides information about the controls and indicators. Ribbon loading and paper loading instructions are also included.
- Chapter 5, "Testing and problem analysis (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)" – provides information on testing and on problem determination.

Part 3, "Models TF6 and TM6," on page 69 contains information that is specific to the single-station SureMark printers:

- Chapter 6, "Operation (Models TF6 and TM6)" – provides information on the controls and indicators. Paper loading instructions are also included.
- Chapter 7, "Testing and problem analysis (Models TF6 and TM6)" – provides information on testing and on problem determination.

The appendixes contain the following information:

- Appendix A, "Consumable supplies" – information about consumable supplies.
- Appendix B, "Technical information" – information about technical specifications.
- Appendix C, "RS-232 programming information" – information about RS-232 programming commands.
- Appendix D, "Uploading electronic journal data" – information about uploading electronic journal data while the SureMark is in Model 4 emulation mode.
- Appendix E, "Proportional fonts" – information about creating and using proportional fonts.
- Appendix F, "Emulation support for Epson single-station printer" – expanded information about Epson emulation mode.
- Appendix G, "Notices" – information about trademarks and electronic emission notices.

Related publications and diskettes

- *IBM SureMark Printers: Hardware Service Manual*, GY27-0355
- *IBM SureMark Printers: Fonts and Logos Utility Diskette*
- *IBM SureMark Printers: firmware update diskettes*
- *IBM 4693 Point-of-Sale Terminals Reference Diskette*
- *IBM 4694/4695 Point-of-Sale Terminals Service Diskette*
- *IBM Safety Information – Read This First*, GA27-4004.
- *IBM SurePOS 700 Series: System Reference*, SA27-4220.
- *IBM SurePOS 500 Series: System Reference*, SA27-4255.
- *POSS Programming Reference and User's Guide*, SC30-3560

The diskettes are only available by download from the Internet. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for more information.

For information about ordering IBM publications not shipped with the SureMark Printers, contact your IBM representative or your place of purchase.

Where to find more information

A CD-ROM is available that contains books that are part of the IBM Retail Store Solutions Library Collection, SK2T-0331.

Current versions of Retail Store Solutions documentation and downloadable diskettes are available on our Web site. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for information about accessing the site.

Tell us what you think

Your feedback is important in helping to provide the most accurate and high-quality information. Please take a few moments to tell us what you think about this book. The only way for us to know if you are satisfied with our books, or how we might improve their quality, is through feedback from customers like you. If you have any comments about this book, there is a comment form at the back of this book. You can also get a copy of the form from the PDF version of the book on the Web.

To access a PDF version of this book, visit the Retail Store Solutions Web site at <http://www.ibm.com/solutions/retail/store>. From there, select **Support** at the left, then select **Publications**.

After you have filled out the form, return it by mail, by fax, or by giving it to an IBM representative. If applicable, include a reference to the specific location of the text on which you are commenting. For instance, include the page or table number.

Between major revisions of this manual we may make minor technical updates. The latest softcopy version of this manual is available under Publications on the IBM Retail Store Solutions Web site.

Safety information



Danger:

Before you begin to install this product, read the safety information in *IBM Safety Information - Read This First*, GA27-4004. This booklet describes safe procedures for cabling and plugging in electrical equipment.



Gevaar:

Voordat u begint met de installatie van dit produkt, moet u eerst de veiligheidsinstructies lezen in de brochure *Veiligheidsinstructies—Lees dit eerst*, GA27-4004. Hierin wordt beschreven hoe u elektrische apparatuur op een veilige manier moet bekabelen en aansluiten.



Perigo:

Antes de começar a instalar este produto, leia as informações de segurança contidas em *Informações Sobre Segurança—Leia Isto Primeiro*, GA27-4004. Esse folheto descreve procedimentos de segurança para a instalação de cabos e conexões em equipamentos elétricos.



Fare!

Før du installerer dette produkt, skal du lse sikkerhedsforskrifterne i *Sikkerhedsforskrifter—Læs dette først* GA27-4004. Vejledningen beskriver den fremgangsmåde, du skal bruge ved tilslutning af kabler og udstyr.



Gevaar

Voordat u begint met het installeren van dit produkt, dient u eerst de veiligheidsrichtlijnen te lezen die zijn vermeld in de publikatie *IBM Safety Information - Read This First*, GA27-4004. In dit boekje vindt u veilige procedures voor het aansluiten van elektrische apparatuur.



VAARA

Ennen kuin aloitat tämän tuotteen asennuksen, lue julkaisussa *Turvaohjeet—Luetämä ensin*, GA27-4004, olevat turvaohjeet. Tässä kirjasessa on ohjeet siitä, miten sä hkölaitteet kaapeloidaan ja kytketään turvallisesti.

**Danger**

Avant d'installer le présent produit, consultez le livret *Informations pour la sécurité—Lisez-moi d'abord*, GA27-4004, qui décrit les procédures à respecter pour effectuer les opérations de câblage et brancher les équipements électriques en toute sécurité.

**Vorsicht**

Bevor mit der Installation des Produktes begonnen wird, die Sicherheitshinweise in *Sicherheitsinformationen—Bitte zuerst lesen*, IBM Form GA27-4004. Diese Veröffentlichung beschreibt die Sicherheitsvorkehrungen für das Verkabeln und Anschließen elektrischer Geräte.

**Vigyázat**

Mielőtt megkezdi a berendezés üzembe helyezését, olvassa el a *IBM Safety Information — Read This First*, GA27-4004 könyvecskében leírt biztonsági információkat. Ez a könyv leírja, milyen biztonsági intézkedéseket kell megtenni az elektromos berendezés huzalozásakor illetve csatlakoztatásakor.

**Pericolo**

prima di iniziare l'installazione di questo prodotto, leggere le informazioni relative alla sicurezza riportate nell'opuscolo *Informazioni di sicurezza—Prime informazioni da leggere* in cui sono descritte le procedure per il cablaggio ed il collegamento di apparecchiature elettriche.

**Fare**

Før du begynner å installere dette produktet, må du lese sikkerhetsinformasjonen i *Sikkerhetsinformasjon—Les dette først*, GA27–4004 som beskriver sikkerhetsrutinene for kabling og tilkobling av elektrisk utstyr.

**Perigo**

Antes de iniciar a instalação deste produto, leia as informações de segurança *Informações de Segurança—Leia Primeiro*, GA27–4004. Este documento descreve como efectuar, de um modo seguro, as ligações eléctricas dos equipamentos.

**Peligro**

Antes de empezar a instalar este producto, lea la información de seguridad en *Información de Seguridad—Lea Esto Primero*, GA27–4004. Este documento describe los procedimientos de seguridad para cablear y enchufar equipos eléctricos.



Varning—livsfara

Innan du börjar installera den här produkten bör du läsa säkerhetsinformationen i dokumentet *Säkerhetsföreskrifter—Läs detta först*, GA27-4004. Där beskrivs hur du på ett säkert sätt ansluter elektrisk utrustning.

危險：安裝本產品之前，請先閱讀
"IBM Safety Information--Read
This First" GA27-4004 手冊中所提
供的安全注意事項。這本手冊將會說明
使用電器設備的纜線及電源的安全程序。

Opasnost: Prije nego sto počnete sa instalacijom produkta,
pročitajte naputak o pravilima o sigurnom rukovanju u
Upozorenje: Pravila o sigurnom rukovanju - Prvo pročitaj ovo,
GA27-4004. Ovaj privitak opisuje sigurnosne postupke za
priključivanje kabela i priključivanje na električno napajanje.

Upozornění: než zahájíte instalaci tohoto produktu, přečtěte si
nejprve bezpečnostní informace v pokynech „Bezpečnostní
informace“ č. GA27-4004. Tato brožurka popisuje bezpečnostní
opatření pro kabeláž a zapojení elektrického zařízení.

Κίνδυνος: Πριν ξεκινήσετε την εγκατάσταση αυτού του προϊόντος,
διαβάστε τις πληροφορίες ασφάλειας στο φυλλάδιο *IBM Safety
Information-Read this first*, GA27-4004. Στο φυλλάδιο αυτό
περιγράφονται οι ασφαλείς διαδικασίες για την καλωδίωση των
ηλεκτρικών συσκευών και τη σύνδεσή τους στην πρίζα.

危険： 導入作業を開始する前に、安全に関する
小冊子 GA27-4004 の「最初にお読みください」
(Read This First)の項をお読みください。
この小冊子は、電気機器の安全な配線と接続の
手順について説明しています。

위험: 이 제품을 설치하기 전에 반드시
"주의: 안전 정보-시작하기 전에"
(GA27-4004) 에 있는 안전 정보를
읽으십시오.

סכנה : לפני שמתחילים בהתקנת מוצר זה, יש לקרוא את הוראות הבטיחות בחוברת
Caution: Safety Information - Read This First, GA27-4004
חוברת זו מתארת את הוראות הבטיחות לחיבור הכבלים ולחיבור לחשמל של ציוד חשמלי.

خطر: قبل عملية بدء تركيب هذا المنتج، قم بقراءة معلومات
الحماية الموجودة في التحذير: معلومات الحماية – Read This First
GA27-4004 . يقوم هذا الكتيب بوصف اجراءات الأمان
لتوصيل الأدوات الكهربائية بالكابلات والمقبس الكهربائي.

ОПАСНОСТ

Пред да почнете да го инсталирате овој продукт, прочитајте ја информацијата за безбедност:

"Предупредување: Информација за безбедност: Прочитајте го прво ова", GA27-4004.

Оваа брошура опишува безбедносни процедури за каблирање и вклучување на електрична опрема.

Uwaga:

Przed rozpoczęciem instalacji produktu należy zapoznać się z instrukcją:

"IBM Safety Information - Read This First", GA27-4004.

Zawiera ona warunki bezpieczeństwa przy podłączaniu do sieci elektrycznej i eksploatacji.

ОСТОРОЖНО: Прежде чем устанавливать этот продукт, прочтите Инструкцию по технике безопасности в документе "Внимание: Инструкция по технике безопасности -- Прочестъ в первую очередь", GA27-4004. В этой брошюре описаны безопасные способы каблирования и подключения электрического оборудования.

Nebezpečenstvo: Pred inštaláciou výrobku si prečítajte bezpečnostné predpisy v

Výstraha: Bezpečnostné predpisy - Prečítaj ako prvé, GA27-4004. V tejto brožúrke sú opísané bezpečnostné postupy pre pripojenie elektrických zariadení.

Pozor: Preden začnete z instalacijo tega produkta preberite poglavje: "Opozorilo: Informacije o varnem rokovanju-preberi pred uporabo," GA27-4004. To poglavje opisuje pravilne postopke za kabliiranje,

危險：

開始安裝此產品之前，請先閱讀安全資訊。

注意：

請先閱讀 - 安全資訊 GA27-4004

此冊子說明插接電器設備之電纜線的安全程序。

| **End of life disposal**

| IBM encourages owners of information technology (IT) equipment to responsibly
| recycle their equipment when it is no longer needed. IBM offers a variety of
| programs and services to assist equipment owners in recycling their IT products.
| Information about these product recycling offerings can be found on IBM's internet
| site at the following URL.

| <http://www.ibm.com/ibm/environment/products/prp.shtml>

Summary of Changes

This section summarizes the changes included in the latest editions of this manual.

Web-only update for corrections to GA27-4151-05 (August 2004)

Corrections and clarifications for:

- “Paper specifications” on page 79
- “Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request” on page 123
- “Reinitialize the printer” on page 139
- “Start scan” on page 169
- “Select standard mode” on page 178
- Minor changes to formatting

Web-only update for corrections to GA27-4151-05 (August 2003)

Corrections and clarifications for:

- “Document scanner calibration (Model TI8)” on page 59
- Minor changes to formatting

Web-only update for Model TI8, GA27-4151-05 (April 2003)

This update adds the new Model TI8 to this *User's Guide*. This model provides document-scanning capability and a powered flipper. Revision bars in the left margin indicate new or changed information.

Web-only update for GA27-4151-04 (March 2002)

This update contains changes to the paper loading procedure for Models TF6 and TM6.

Web update for GA27-4151-04 (June 2001)

This update contains the following changes and additions:

- The location of the Euro character for code page 858 has been corrected. See “Code page 858” on page 91.
- Information on the new models TG3 and TG4.
- Command format details about barcodes 128a and 128b.
- Flash memory usage message. See 120.
- New table for Code 128 character set. See Table 17 on page 146.
- The commands in Appendix C, “RS-232 programming information,” on page 97 are to be used for RS-232 connections only. Additional information about where to find commands when using RS-485 or USB communications has been added to the beginning of that appendix.

GA27-4151-04

This edition adds information about the new single-station SureMark printers, which are models TF6 and TM6, and also about updates for models TI3 and TI4.

Changes for this edition include:

- Because there are important differences between models TF6 and TM6, which are single-station SureMark printers, and the thermal/impact SureMark printers, the book has been reorganized into three parts.
 - Part 1 contains information that is similar for all SureMark models. Information about the new single-station printers has been added throughout this part.
 - Part 2 contains information that is specific to the thermal/impact SureMark printers – models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4.
 - Part 3 contains information that is specific to the new single-station SureMark printers – models TF6 and TM6.
- A new thermal font has been added. See “Set print mode” on page 127 and “Thermal printing font” on page 94.
- Support for emulation of an Epson single-station printer has been added. See “Emulating an Epson single-station printer (single-station only)” on page 43 for information about how to enable emulation and an overview of the limitations to using emulation mode. See Appendix F, “Emulation support for Epson single-station printer,” on page 191 for detailed information about what Epson commands are supported in emulation mode.
- A font conversion utility has been added as part of the support for proportional fonts. See “Proportional font conversion utility” on page 38.
- Information about uploading electronic journal data while the printer is emulating a Model 4 printer has been added. See Appendix D, “Uploading electronic journal data,” on page 185.
- The following commands have been added:

Note: These commands are not supported for models TI1 and TI2. Currently installed Model TI3, TG3, TI4, and TG4 printers support these commands after you download the latest firmware.

- “Proportional font” on page 117
- “Select color printing” on page 134
- $n=09$ (Align Column Right) for “Align positions” on page 137
- “Enable or disable upside-down printing” on page 142
- “Select character size for scalable fonts” on page 142
- “Fix font matrix” on page 143
- “Print logo inline” on page 143
- “Select thermal paper” on page 144
- $n=09$ (Code 128A, 128B, and 128C) for “Print bar code” on page 145
- The following command, which is supported only on models TF6 and TM6, has been added:
 - “Enable or disable the beeper (Models TF6 and TM6 only)” on page 141

GA27-4151-03

This edition includes information for the support of a USB logic card.

Information that was added includes:

- “USB connector pin assignments” on page 87.
- USB information has been added to “Voltage conversion circuitry” on page 85.
- The part number for the available USB cables has been added to “Features used with the SureMark printers” on page 6.

- Information about your responsibilities when using USB communications has been added to “Planning information” on page 8.
- The data rate for USB communications has been added to “Communication interfaces” on page 9.
- USB information has been added to “Hardware requirements” on page 12.
- Information about installing the SureMark Printer for use with USB communications has been added to “Installing SureMark for USB communication” on page 21.
- Information about installing fillers for the SureMark Printer when the USB feature is used has been added to “Installing fillers for USB printers” on page 27.
- Communication mode information for USB has been added to “USB communication mode” on page 33.
- Relevant information for performing problem determination with USB has been added to Table 3 on page 66.

GA27-4151-02

This edition includes information about two new models of the SureMark printer – Model TI3 and Model TI4. Because Model TI3 is a new version of Model TI1, and Model TI4 is a new version of Model TI2, in some cases only the new model number was added to the existing text.

Information that was added includes:

- “Comparison of the SureMark models” on page 7, which describes the microcode, hardware, and operating system differences.
- “Firmware update” on page 38, which describes the methods that you can use to update the SureMark firmware.
- “Enable or disable the feed buttons (Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)” on page 140 and “Set or cancel high-quality print mode” on page 130, which describe new RS-232 commands.

Information that was changed includes:

- “Software requirements” on page 13, which includes operating system and driver requirements, and application requirements.
- “Code page definitions” on page 88. Code page 850, which is resident in Model TI1 and TI2, has been replaced in this document by code page 858, which is resident in Models TI3 and TI4. Code page 858 is the same as code page 850 plus the euro character symbol.
- Zero (0) is no longer valid for the RS-232 command “Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request” on page 123.
- The Remarks under “Define document wait time” on page 138 have been corrected and expanded.

Because documentation, drivers, and diskettes are now available on the Web, “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 was added to describe how to locate the applicable Web site.

Along with these changes and additions, the manual was also reorganized. The information that was in Appendixes B and E, along with some additional information, is now in Chapter 3, “SureMark installation, service, and utility software,” on page 35.

August 24, 2004

Figures

1.	IBM SureMark Printers	3
2.	SureMark Printer dimensions – Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4	10
3.	SureMark Printer dimensions – Model TI8.	11
4.	SureMark Printer Dimensions – Models TF6 and TM6	12
5.	Cable Connectors and RS-232 Settings Switch for Thermal/Impact SureMark Printers	18
6.	Cable Connectors for Single-Station SureMark Printers.	19
7.	RS-232 Mode Switches for Single-Station SureMark Printers.	19
8.	RS-232 and RS-485 Cable Routing for Single-Station SureMark Printers	20
9.	USB Ports for Thermal/Impact SureMark Printers	21
10.	USB Ports for Single-Station SureMark Printers	22
11.	USB Cable Routing for Single-Station SureMark Printers	22
12.	Mounting a Single-Station SureMark on a Wall	24
13.	Installing the Fillers for RS-232/RS-485 Systems	26
14.	Installing the fillers for USB systems.	28
15.	SurePOS 500/600 integration	29
16.	Adjustment and Alignment Printouts	37
17.	Switch for Epson Emulation	44
18.	SureMark Printer - Indicators, Controls, and Printing Stations (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	47
19.	Inserting Checks or Documents in a Model TI2, TI4, TI8, or TG4 Printer	48
20.	Side insertion of Documents in a Model TI8 Printer	49
21.	Printable Area of an Inserted Document (Portrait)	49
22.	Printable Area of an Inserted Document (Landscape)	50
23.	Opening the Ribbon Cover	51
24.	Ribbon Cartridge Loading	51
25.	Ribbon Path around the Printhead	52
26.	Paper Cover (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4).	53
27.	Paper Loading Path (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	54
28.	Removing the Lower Document Insert (DI) Cover	55
29.	Removing the Check Flipper Cartridge (except Model TI8)	56
30.	Printhead and Print Line Area (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	58
31.	Scanner and print head location, Model TI8	59
32.	Offline Printer Test Pattern – Customer Receipt Station (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4)	63
33.	MICR Reader Test Results, Models TI2, TI4, and TG4 – Good Noise Level	65
34.	MICR Reader Test Results, Model TI8 – Good Noise Level	65
35.	MICR Reader Test Results – Noise Level Needs Adjusting	65
36.	SureMark Printer - Indicator, Control, and Printing Station (Models TF6 and TM6)	71
37.	Paper Loading Path (Models TF6 and TM6)	72
38.	Printhead and Print Line Area (Models TF6 and TM6)	73
39.	Offline Printer Test Pattern – Models TF6 and TM6	77
40.	Printer's Resident Character Set - Generic Code Page	89
41.	Code Page 437	90
42.	Code Page 858	91
43.	Code Page 860	92
44.	Code Page 863	93
45.	Code Page 865	94
46.	Proportional Font Example	119
47.	Scanned image layout	170
48.	Scanned image organization	172

August 24, 2004

Tables

1.	Warranty information	5
2.	Adjustment procedures using the Point-of-Sale Device Diagnostics	36
3.	Troubleshooting – Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4	66
4.	Troubleshooting – Models TF6 and TM6	78
5.	Station characteristics	84
6.	Sound characteristics	84
7.	9-pin to 9-pin RS-232 connector layout.	87
8.	25-pin to 25-pin RS-232 connector layout.	87
9.	Driver documentation by operating system	100
10.	RS-232 commands organized by function	100
11.	RS-232 commands in alphabetical order.	105
12.	Memory allocation for Model TI8 functions	112
13.	MCT command definitions	123
14.	Fonts for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, TG4, TI8, TF6, and TM6	127
15.	Fonts for Models TI1 and TI2	127
16.	Width and height for scalable fonts.	142
17.	Code 128 character set	146
18.	Retrievable usage data	158
19.	Data table	174
20.	Print direction	179
21.	Commands supported in Epson emulation mode.	191
22.	Commands with limited support in Epson emulation mode	193
23.	Commands not supported in Epson emulation mode	194

August 24, 2004

Part 1. General information

This part contains descriptions of the SureMark printers and information about installing the printers.

Note: IOR 24x7 is IBM on site repair 24 hours per day, seven days per week. 9x5 is nine hours per day, five days per week.

August 24, 2004

Chapter 1. Introduction

Printer overview	3
Description of models	4
Features used with the SureMark printers	6
Comparison of the SureMark models	7
Differences among Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4	7
Differences between Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, and Models TF6, TM6	7
Planning information	8
Your responsibilities	8
Limitations	9
Communication interfaces	9
Temperature and humidity limits	9
Physical dimensions	9
Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4	10
Model TI8	10
Models TF6 and TM6	11
Power requirements	12
Hardware requirements	12
Software requirements	13
Operating system requirements	13
Application requirements	14
Resident code pages	14
Bar codes	14

Printer overview

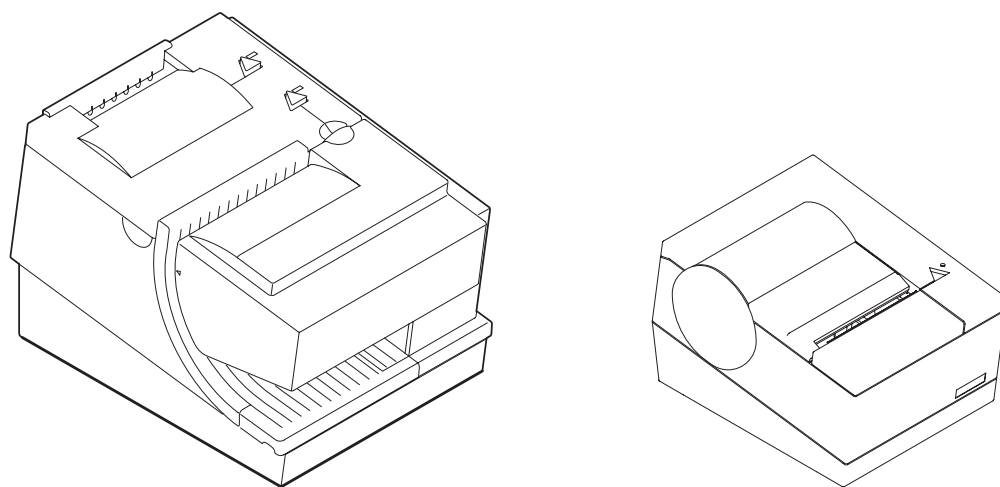


Figure 1. IBM SureMark Printers

The IBM SureMark Printers are high-performance, high-function printers. The SureMark is available in several models:

- Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4 feature a thermal customer receipt station and an impact document insert station. The dual printheads enable quiet, fast printing at the customer receipt station while providing the capability to print and frank checks and to print multipart forms through the document insert station. (Models TI1 and TI2 are older versions of Models TI3 and TI4, respectively. Production of the older models has ceased.)

- Model T18 provides a document scanner and a powered flipper, in addition to all the features of Model T14.
- Models TF6 and TM6 are single-station thermal printers. They contain no document insert station. These models cost less, weigh less, and have a smaller footprint than the thermal/impact SureMark printers. Models TF6 and TM6 have been designed for wall mounting, if desired by the retailer.

All SureMark printers provide:

- Fast, quiet receipt printing
- Easy paper loading
- 256-KB flash memory for storing messages, logos, code pages, and electronic journal data
- Model T18 has 1MB flash memory for scanned image storage
- Bar code generation
- Downloadable fonts and code pages
- Downloadable microcode
- Small footprint
- Support for RS-232 (EIA 232) and RS-485 (EIA 485) interfaces
- Support for Universal Serial Bus (USB) interface

The single-station SureMark printers, the SureMark Model T18, and also SureMark Models T13, T14, TG3, and TG4 that have been updated with the latest firmware, support the following in the thermal station:

- Proportional fonts
- Scalable fonts
- Color printing – black plus one accent on two-color thermal paper (thermal station only)
- Upside-down printing

Additional features of some SureMark models include:

- Single-pass handling of checks (Models T12, T14, T18, and TG4)
- Easy-to-load ribbon cartridge (Models T11, T12, T13, T14, T18, TG3 and TG4)
- Epson emulation (Models TF6 and TM6)
- Document scanning (Model T18)

Description of models

The SureMark Printers are available in the following models:

Models T11 and T13

Standard models that support receipt and document printing. (Model T11 can no longer be ordered.)

Models T12, T14

High-function models that feature improved check handling. Check handling uses the MICR reader and check flipper that are included in these models. (Model T12 can no longer be ordered.)

With one insertion of a check into a Model T12, T14, T18 printer, the printer uses its MICR reader to read the magnetic-ink-character line on the check, franks the check, and prints the face of the check. While the printer is processing the check, the operator is free to attend to the customer's needs, which shortens the total transaction time.

Model T18

In addition to the features of the Model T14, the T18 has a document scanner feature. Scanned documents can be stored and retrieved in .TIFF,

.JPEG, and .BMP formats, and 8-bit gray scale. The Model TI8 has increased flipper speed due to a powered flipper.

Models TG3, and TG4

Models TG3 and TG4 are equivalent to Models TI3 and TI4, respectively, except for the external color of the covers. Models TG3 and TG4 have iron gray covers.

Models TF6 and TM6

Smaller models that contain only a thermal customer receipt station. Because there is no document insert station, these models do not support document printing.

Models TF6 and TM6 have an audible alarm, a spill-resistant design, and an optional wall mount.

For Food Service customers, Model TF6 covers match the IBM SurePOS™ 500 Series systems. For Retail customers, Model TM6 covers match the IBM 4694 systems if the RS-232/RS-485 interface is ordered, and the covers match the IBM SurePOS 700 Series systems if the USB interface is ordered.

Table 1 shows the warranty information for each printer model.

Table 1. Warranty information

Machine type	Description	Warranty service	Warranty upgrade
4610-TI3	Attaches to the IBM 4694/4800. RS-232, RS-485, USB (Pearl white covers)	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TI4	Attaches to the IBM 4694/4800. RS-232, RS-485, USB (Pearl white covers)	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TI8	Attaches to the IBM 4694/4800. RS-232, RS-485, USB (Bottom cover comes in two colors)	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TI5 (DBCS – AP only)	Attaches to the IBM 4694/4800. RS-232, RS-485, USB (Pearl white covers)	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TM6	Attaches to the IBM 4694/4800. RS-232, RS-485, USB (Pearl white covers)	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TM7 (DBCS – AP only)	Attaches to the IBM 4694/4800. RS-232, RS-485, USB (Pearl white covers)	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TF6	TM6 with iron gray covers to match 4840	Depot repair	IOR 24x7 IOR 9x5
4610-TF7	TM7 with iron gray covers to match 4840	Depot repair	IOR 24x7, IOR 9x5
4610-IF6	Functionally equivalent to TF6 with iron gray covers but with IOR warranty	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TG3	Functionally equivalent to Model TI3 with iron gray covers to match the IBM 4840	IOR 24x7	none

Table 1. Warranty information (continued)

Machine type	Description	Warranty service	Warranty upgrade
4610-TG4	Functionally equivalent to Model TI4 with iron gray covers to match the IBM 4840	IOR 24x7	none
4610-TG5 (DBCS – AP only)	Functionally equivalent to Model TI5 with iron gray covers to match the IBM 4840	IOR 24x7	none
4610-DG3	Functionally equivalent to Model TG3 but with Depot warranty	Depot repair	IOR 24x7, 9x5
4610-DG4	Functionally equivalent to Model TG4 but with Depot warranty	Depot repair	IOR 24x7, 9x5
4610-DI3	Functionally equivalent to Model TI3 but with Depot warranty	Depot repair	IOR 24x7, 9x5
4610-DI4	Functionally equivalent to Model TI4 but with Depot warranty	Depot repair	IOR 24x7, 9x5
4610-DI8	Functionally equivalent to Model TI8 but with Depot warranty	Depot repair	IOR 24x7, 9x5
4610-DM6	Functionally equivalent to Model TM6 but with Depot warranty	Depot repair	IOR 24x7, 9x5

Note: IOR 24x7 is IBM onsite repair 24 hours times seven days per week. 9x5 is nine hours per day for five days per week.

Features used with the SureMark printers

All models support the following features:

- Integration Panel
- 40-Character VFD Post Extension
- Distributed Printer Cable (RS-485)
- Integrated Cable (RS-485)
- Short RS-232 Communications Cable, 2 m (about 6.6 ft), P/N 86H2192
- Long RS-232 Communications Cable, 4 m (about 13.1 ft), P/N 86H2195
- Power Supply (RS-232 and USB), P/N 42H1176
- Power Cords (country-specific)
- RS-232/RS-485 Interface Card

Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TM6 and TF6 support the following features:

- USB Cable — Powered, 0.5 m (about 1.6 ft), P/N 01L1646
- USB Cable — Powered, 3.8 m (about 12.5 ft), P/N 01L1647
- USB Cable — Standard, 5.0 m (about 16.4 ft), P/N 08L2014
- USB Interface Card

Because a cash drawer can attach directly to the SureMark, all models also support the following features:

- Compact Cash Drawer - Vertical Till
- Compact Cash Drawer - Horizontal Till
- Full-size Cash Drawer - Adjustable Till

- Full-size Cash Drawer - Fixed Till Insert
- Short Cash Drawer Cable, P/N 72H3802
- Long Cash Drawer Cable, P/N 72H3803

Comparison of the SureMark models

The SureMark models can be divided into three groups:

- Models TI1 and TI2 – models that can no longer be ordered. Because these are not currently being manufactured, they do not support some functions that are on the current models.
- Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 – Models with a thermal print station for customer receipts and an impact print station for document processing. These models are currently being manufactured.
- Model TI8 additionally has document scanning.
- Models TF6 and TM6 – Models with only a thermal print station for customer receipts.

Differences among Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4

- Different microcode is required to operate each of the following groups of printers:
 - Models TI1 and TI2
 - Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4
 - Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4 with the 2-MB card option
 - Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4 with the 8-MB card option
- Total amount of data space available for the download of graphic messages is 65 376 bytes for Models TI1 and TI2, but only 65 136 bytes for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4. Model TI8 has from 0 KB to 1 MB, user allocatable.
- Memory allocated to store incoming commands and data is 16K for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 but only 4K for Models TI1 and TI2).
- Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 operate at higher speeds than Models TI1 and TI2.
- Code page 858, which contains the euro character symbol, is resident in Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4. Code page 850, which contains all character symbols from code page 858 excluding the euro character symbol, is resident in Models TI1 and TI2.
- The second byte of the device ID specifies what model of SureMark is being used. The 4690 OS uses the printer model to determine the name of the microcode update file:
 - ADXPJPUF.DAT for Models TI1 and TI2
 - ADXPJPFF.DAT for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4
 - ADXPJP2F.DAT for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4 with the 2-MB card option
 - For microcode update information for the Model TI8, see the IBM Retail Store Solutions Web site at: <http://www.ibm.com/solutions/retail/store>.

Differences between Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, and Models TF6, TM6

Models TF6 and TM6 are single-station thermal printers. These models do not include an impact station. Therefore they cannot be used for any of the check handling that thermal/impact SureMark Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 support.

The single-station SureMark printers have a lower weight, lower cost, and smaller footprint than the thermal/impact printers. The single-station SureMark printers are designed to provide a cost-effective printer in environments that do not require document printing and check processing.

The single-station SureMark printers are spill-resistant, which makes them a good choice for food service customers. In the single-station printers, the logic card and interface card are mounted vertically, which minimizes the possibility of damage from spills. (In the thermal/impact printers, although the logic card is mounted vertically, the interface card is mounted horizontally.) For particularly hazardous locations, an optional spill cover is available for Models TF6 and TM6.

Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 have a trap-door design that allows you to easily change to a new interface, for example when upgrading from RS-232 to USB. To change the interface on a single-station SureMark, you must remove the bottom cover, then remove both the logic card and the interface card (they are joined by a connector).

The single-station SureMark printers support a 90 mm diameter paper roll, instead of the 80 mm paper roll that is used with the thermal/impact printers. The single-station printers also support an external larger paper roll via RPQ. When the external paper roll is used, the paper feeds into the printer through a slot in the bottom cover of the printer.

A power switch is located inside the top cover of the single-station SureMark printers. Power to the thermal/impact SureMark printers is controlled by the system or by an external power supply.

Because of their smaller size and lighter weight, the single-station SureMark printers are designed for wall mounting. Like the other SureMark printers, they can also be mounted on a system unit or a countertop.

Planning information

Your responsibilities

You are responsible for replenishing consumable supplies, including roll paper for the thermal (customer receipt station) printer, and, depending on your model, forms, ribbon cartridges for the impact (document insert) station, and MICR read head cleaning cards for the MICR reader. (See Appendix A, "Consumable supplies," on page 79.)

It is the customers responsibilities to update printer firmware as needed prior to installing printers and as desired during the printer's life.

If you plan to use RS-232 communications, you are responsible for ordering a 24 V dc power supply with a power cord. You are also responsible for ordering the RS-232 cable.

Note: If a 3-wire RS-232 cable is to be used, the printer must be set to XON/XOFF mode. (See "RS-232 communications protocol selection" on page 29.)

If you plan to use RS-485 communications, you are responsible for ordering the RS-485 cable.

If you plan to use USB communications, you are responsible for ordering one of the following:

- A powered USB cable. The 3.8-m USB cable for a distributed configuration is P/N 01L1647 and the 0.5-m USB cable for an integrated configuration is P/N 01L1646.
- A standard USB cable, P/N 08L2014, with a Type B connector for the printer, and a power brick.

SureMark printers have no physical journal station. You must use an electronic journaling application instead. Electronic journaling eliminates the need to store paper journal tapes and the time-consuming task of searching papers should the need arise.

Limitations

SureMark printers have a safety feature which slows printing if excessive duty cycles are used. This feature protects the printer hardware from potential damage and should not be noticeable during normal operation.

For Model TI2, TI4, and TI8, sources of electromagnetic noise (for example, displays, security towers, and other sources) can interfere with the MICR read head. The printer is equipped to filter noise from many of these devices. If the MICR reader does not function properly, rearranging the printer relative to the device may improve MICR reading. The noise source should be as far away as possible from the right side of the printer. For additional information on troubleshooting MICR reader problems, see "Offline tests" on page 62.

The single-insert check handling feature of SureMark Models TI2, TI4, TI8, TG4 is provided to customers as an added convenience when customer service is a priority. Checks in good condition will feed reliably; damaged checks may not.

Communication interfaces

All SureMark printers can support the RS-232 and RS-485 interfaces. Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TM6, and TF6 can also support the USB interface. For SureMark models that can support the USB interface, you can upgrade installed printers from RS-232/RS-485 to USB by ordering a USB interface card.

RS-232 supports 9600 and 19 200 baud rates, and in the Model TI8 only, 115 200.

RS-485 operates at a 187.5K baud rate.

USB supports data rates up to 12 Mbps.

Temperature and humidity limits

Shipping	-40° to 60° C (-40° to 140° F) with 5% to 100% relative humidity including condensation, but excluding rain
Storage	0 to 60° C (32 to 140° F)
Operating	0 to 40° C (32 to 104° F) with 8 to 80% relative humidity

To allow convection cooling, ventilation holes in the covers must not be blocked.

Physical dimensions

Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4 all have the same dimensions. Model TI8 is taller, whereas Models TF6 and TM6 have a smaller footprint.

Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4

Width	190.5 mm (7.5 in.)
Depth	255 mm (10 in.)
Height	Front: 140 mm (5.5 in.), Rear: 190 mm (7.5 in.)
Weight	4.4 kg (9.6 lb)

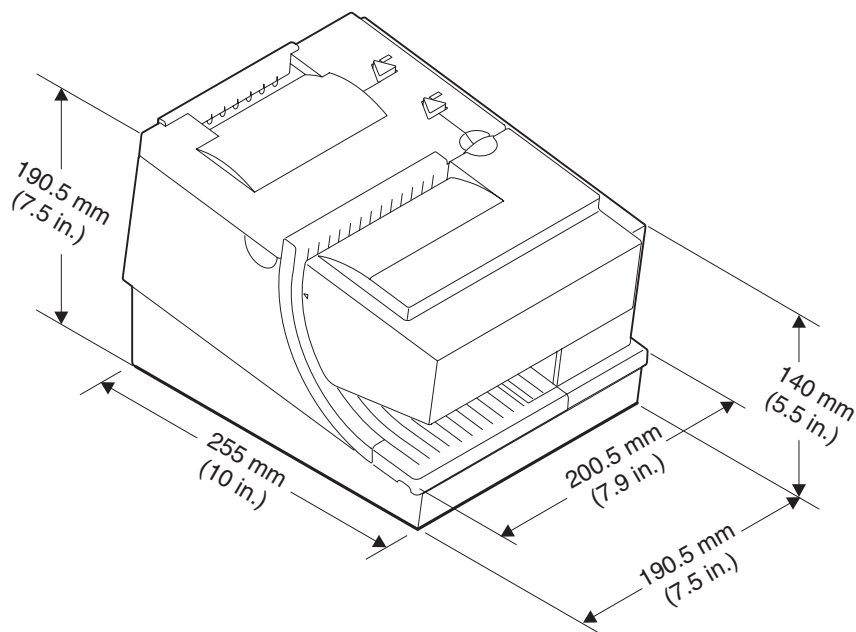


Figure 2. SureMark Printer dimensions – Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4

Model TI8

Width	190.5 mm (7.5 in.)
Depth	255 mm (10 in.)
Height	Front: 153.4 (6.0 in.), Rear: 199.5 mm (7.9 in.)
Weight	4.9 kg (10.8 lb)

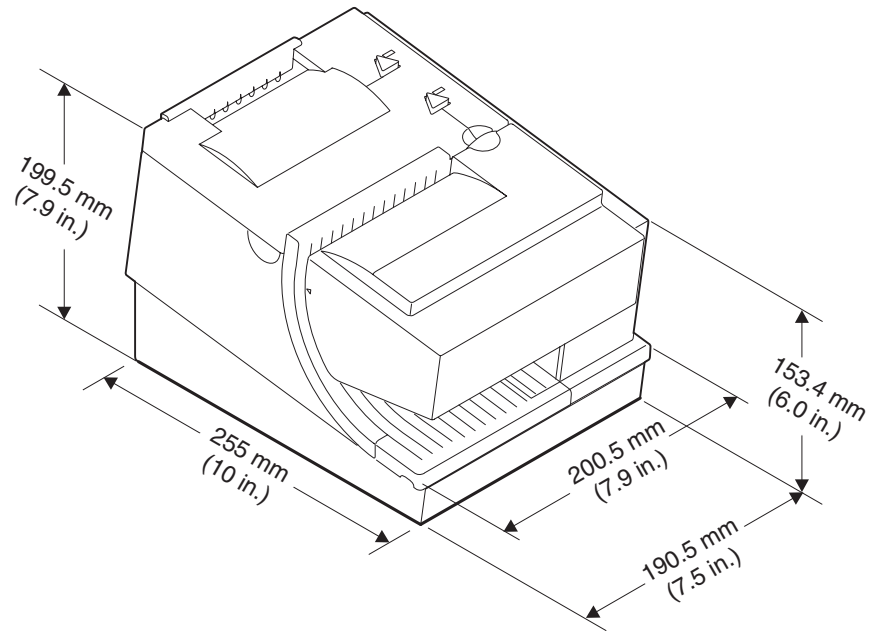


Figure 3. SureMark Printer dimensions – Model TI8

Models TF6 and TM6

Width	145 mm (5.7 in.)
Depth	177 mm (7.0 in.)
Height	Front: 95 mm (3.7 in.), Rear: 121 mm (4.8 in.)
Weight	1.4 kg (3.0 lb) without paper

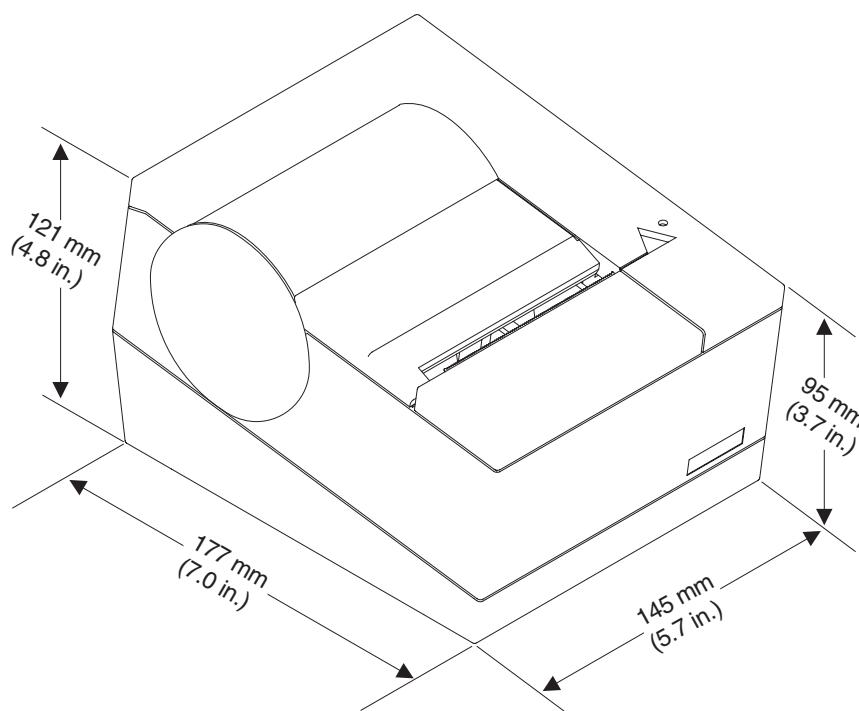


Figure 4. SureMark Printer Dimensions – Models TF6 and TM6

Power requirements

The SureMark Printers do not contain a power supply. When the printer is operating in RS-232 mode, an external power supply must be attached to connector J2 of the interface card of the printer. This connector is located under the printer and is accessible without removing the printer covers. (See Figure 5 on page 18 for thermal/impact SureMark printers, and Figure 6 on page 19 for single-station SureMark printers.) Connector J2 has the following pin functions:

Pin	Signal
1	+24V dc
2	Not Connected
3	Ground

When the SureMark is operating in RS-485 mode, power is supplied to the printer from the IBM POS system. The system supplies 38V dc and 5V dc to the printer.

When the SureMark has the USB feature installed and is using the powered USB cable with a SurePOS 700 Series system, 24V is supplied from the system unit.

When the SureMark has the USB feature installed and is using a 4-wire cable with a Type B connector, an external power brick (+24V dc) must be used.

Hardware requirements

SureMark Printers work with the following systems:

- IBM 4614 SureOne® POS terminal (RS-232 connection only)
- IBM 4683 systems (RS-485 connection only)
- IBM 4693 systems
- IBM 4694 systems

- IBM 4695 systems (RS-232 connection only and with power supply)
- 7497 POS Attachment Adapter (RPQ 8Q1238 in US, RS-485 only)
- PC or other store controller with an RS-232 or USB port
- SurePOS 700 Series systems (USB connection only)
- SurePOS 500 Series systems (RS-232 connection only)

Software requirements

Operating system requirements

POSS drivers can be downloaded from the Retail Store Solutions Web site. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for more information.

If you use the RS-485 interface, you must use POSS or 4690 OS drivers. If you use the RS-232 interface, use the commands described in Appendix C, “RS-232 programming information,” on page 97.

RS-232 interface: When using the RS-232 interface, attach thermal/impact SureMark Printers to systems that are running one of these operating systems:

- Windows® 2000 Professional with OPOS and JavaPOS™ support from POS Suite V1.2 or later
- Windows 98 Second Edition or Windows NT® 4.0 with OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.0 or later

When using the RS-232 interface, attach single-station SureMark Printers to systems that are running Windows 2000 Professional, Windows 98 Second Edition, or Windows NT 4.0 with OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.3.1 or later

RS-485 interface: When using the RS-485 interface, attach thermal/impact SureMark Printers to systems that are running one of these operating systems:

- 4690 Operating System Version 1 at maintenance level 9910, 4690 OS V2 or 4690 OS V2R3
- IBM PC DOS 2000 or later with POSS for DOS V1.60(b) plus delta package 160(D), or later
- Windows 2000 Professional with:
 - POSS for Windows from POS Suite V1.1 or later
 - OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.2 or later
- Windows 98 Second Edition or Windows NT 4.0 with POSS for Windows, OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.0 or later

When using the RS-485 interface, attach single-station SureMark Printers to systems that are running one of these operating systems:

- IBM PC DOS 2000 with POSS for DOS V2.10 or later (Model TM6 only)
- Windows 2000 Professional, Windows 98 Second Edition, or Windows NT 4.0 with:
 - POSS for Windows from POS Suite V1.3.0 or later
 - OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.3.1 or later

USB interface: When using the USB interface, attach thermal/impact SureMark Printers to systems that are running one of these operating systems:

- 4690 OS V2R3, which includes JavaPOS 1.4
- Windows 2000 Professional with:
 - POSS for Windows from POS Suite V1.1 or later
 - OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.2 or later

- Windows 98 Second Edition or Windows NT 4.0 with POSS for Windows, OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.0 or later

When using the USB interface, attach single-station SureMark Printers to systems that are running one of these operating systems:

- Windows 2000 Professional, Windows 98 Second Edition, or Windows NT 4.0 with:
 - POSS for Windows from POS Suite V1.3.0 or later
 - OPOS and JavaPOS support from POS Suite V1.3.1 or later

Application requirements

Customers must be at these application levels (or higher) when running the 4690 OS:

Application Name	Product Number	Maintenance Level
IBM SUREPOS Application Client/Server Environment for 4690 OS	5745-C44	N/A
IBM Chain Drug Sales Application	5669-212	9701 with PRPQ 5799-QYP
IBM 4680/4690 General Sales Application	5696-546	9701 with APAR IR33229 and PRPQ 5799-QYN
IBM 4680/4690 Supermarket Application	5696-536	9701 with APAR IR33228 plus PRPQ 5799-QYL
StoreFlow (see note 1)		Release 1.4
Notes: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where available, supports Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4 at the point of sale. 2. 4690 Terminal Services for Windows NT is required when you use Windows NT 4.0 or Windows 2000 as the primary operating system with these 4690 applications. 		

Resident code pages

These code pages are resident in the printer:

- Generic
- 437 (US)
- 850 (International) – only Models TI1 and TI2
- 858 (International) – only Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6
- 860 (Portuguese)
- 863 (Canadian French)
- 865 (Norwegian)

Additional code pages (four thermal and two impact) can be downloaded, if desired, using diskettes that are available on the Web. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for more information about downloading diskettes.

Bar codes

SureMark printers can generate these bar codes:

- UPC-A
- UPC-E
- JAN13 (EAN-13)
- JAN8 (EAN-8)
- Code 39
- ITF

August 24, 2004

- Codabar
- Code 128C
- Codes 128A, 128B, and 128C (only Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6)
- Code 93
- PDF417

Chapter 2. Installation instructions

Unpacking the printer	17
Installing the SureMark printers	18
Installing for RS-232/RS-485 communication	18
Installing SureMark for USB communication	21
Using the wall mounting feature.	24
Installing the fillers	25
Installing fillers for RS-232/RS-485 printers	25
Installing fillers for USB printers.	27
RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except TI8	29
Baud rate selection	29
RS-232 communications protocol selection	29
DTR/DSR control	30
XON/XOFF control	31
RS-232 communication mode selections — Model TI8	32
Baud rate selection	32
RS-232 communications protocol selection	32
USB communication mode	33
USB selection	33

Before installing an IBM SureMark printer, be sure to read “Electronic emission notices” on page 195.



To avoid a shock hazard, do not connect or disconnect any cables or perform installation, maintenance, or reconfiguration of this product during an electrical storm.



- To avoid shock hazard:
- The power cord must be connected to a properly wired and earthed receptacle.
 - Any equipment to which this product will be attached must also be connected to properly wired receptacles.

Note: For translations of these safety notices, see *IBM Safety Information — Read This First*, GA27-4004.

Unpacking the printer

Note: Save all packing material and shipping containers.

1. Remove the SureMark printer from the shipping container and place it on a flat surface.
2. Open any shipping containers of additional options and accessories to install with the SureMark printer.
3. Carefully remove any remaining packing material and packing tape.

Installing the SureMark printers

Installing for RS-232/RS-485 communication

1. Power the system off and disconnect the RS-232 power supply.
2. Locate the rear cable connectors.
3. If you are using the RS-232 communication port:
 - a. For all models except TI8, check the settings on the RS-232 mode switch, which is near the rear cable connections. (See Figure 5 for thermal/impact printers. See Figure 6 on page 19 and Figure 7 on page 19 for single-station printers.) See "RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except TI8" on page 29 for information on switch settings. For Model TI8, see "RS-232 communication mode selections — Model TI8" on page 32.
- Notes:**

 - 1) If the RS-232 communication cable has only 3 wires or if the system output is 3 pins (2 signals and a ground), you must use XON/XOFF mode.
 - 2) Model TI8 does not have a mode switch for RS-232 settings.
- b. Connect the power supply to the printer.
4. Connect the RS-485 or RS-232 communication cable to the correct port.

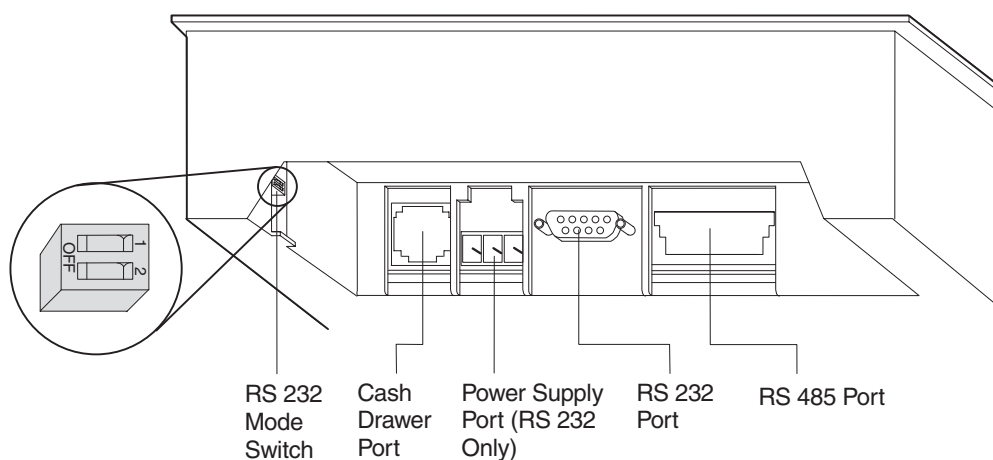


Figure 5. Cable Connectors and RS-232 Settings Switch for Thermal/Impact SureMark Printers. (View is from the bottom rear of the printer)

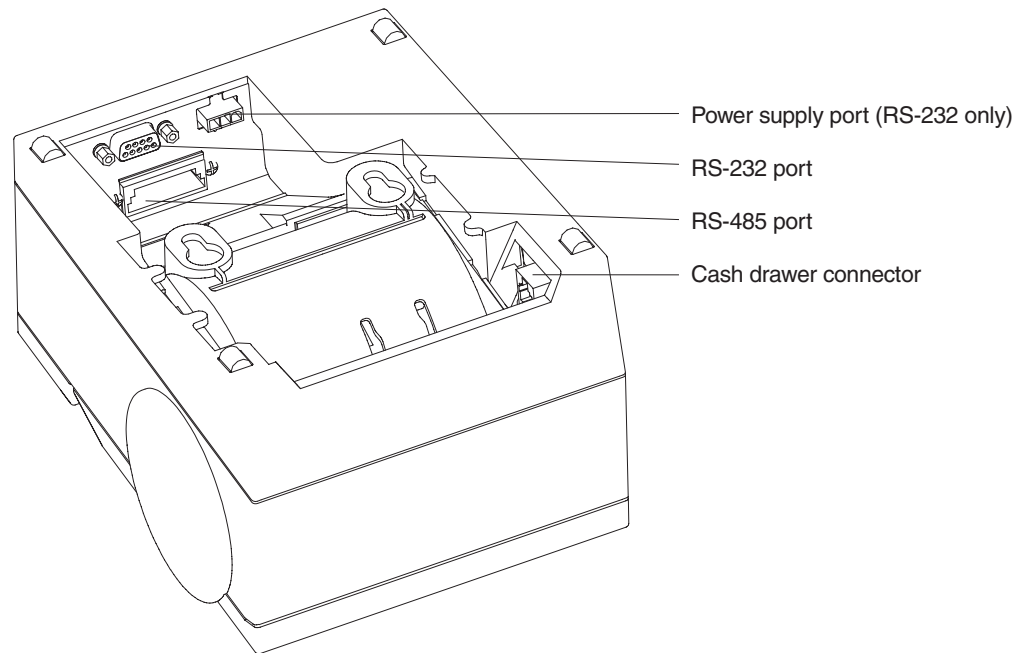


Figure 6. Cable Connectors for Single-Station SureMark Printers. (View is from the bottom rear of the printer)

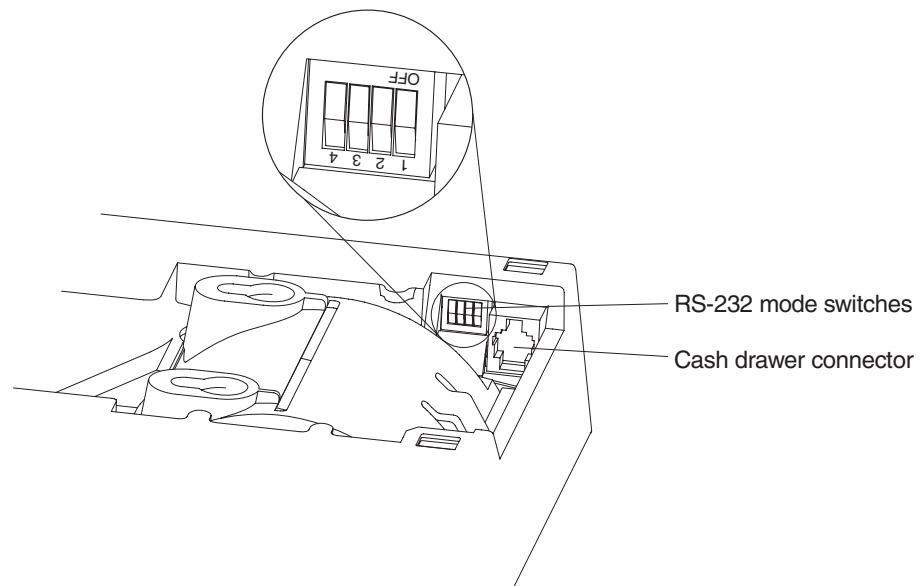


Figure 7. RS-232 Mode Switches for Single-Station SureMark Printers. (View is from the bottom rear of the printer)

5. For single-station printers, route any power cord and cables as shown in Figure 8 on page 20.

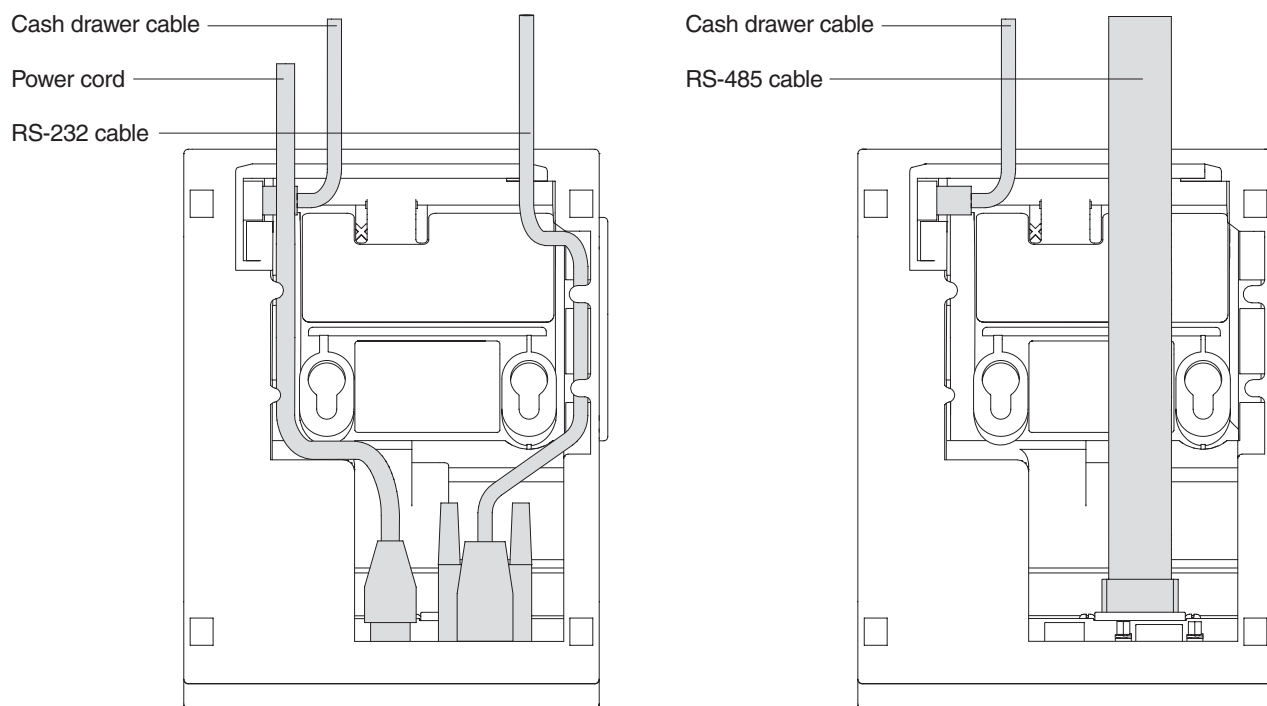


Figure 8. RS-232 and RS-485 Cable Routing for Single-Station SureMark Printers

6. Connect any other signal cables for I/O devices to the correct ports.
7. Check that all signal cables are installed and seated in the correct ports.
8. If you are installing the printer on an integrated unit:
 - a. Pull out the locking lever at the left side of the system unit. (wide systems only)
 - b. For single-station printers, place the printer in the square-shaped filler panel.
 - c. Route the keyboard cable to the side of the tab as shown in Figure 13 on page 26.
 - d. Route all cables attached to the printer through the center opening of the system unit and place the printer (with its filler panel, if it is a single-station printer) on the system unit.
 - e. If you have additional fillers to install, go to "Installing the fillers" on page 25.
 - f. Lift the system unit rear cover and attach any cables from the printer to the system unit. (If this is a RS-232-attached printer, reattach the brick power cord if you had to detach it to route it through the center opening.)
9. Power on the printer by either:
 - Connecting the brick power supply cable to a properly wired and grounded power source and powering it on.
 - Powering on the POS system unit for an RS-485-attached printer.

Note: Both voltage sources should not be connected to the printer at the same time, even if one of the sources is powered off. Potential system damage could occur under these conditions.

10. For single-station SureMark printers, turn on the power on/off switch on the printer.
11. For thermal/impact SureMark printers, locate the ribbon cartridge and install it in the printer. (See “Ribbon loading” on page 51.) Be sure that the ribbon is routed through the printhead correctly.
12. Load the paper roll into the printer. See “Paper loading” on page 53 for thermal/impact SureMark printers or “Paper loading” on page 71 for single-station SureMark printers.
13. Installation is now complete. Go to Chapter 5, “Testing and problem analysis (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4),” on page 61 for thermal/impact printers or Chapter 7, “Testing and problem analysis (Models TF6 and TM6),” on page 75 for single-station printers and run the offline tests.

Installing SureMark for USB communication

1. Disconnect the power brick from the printer, if one is connected.
2. Locate the rear cable connectors on the printer.

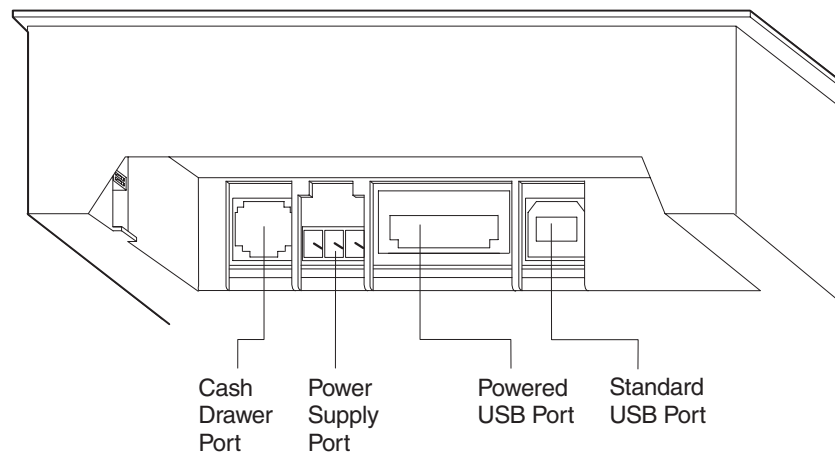


Figure 9. USB Ports for Thermal/Impact SureMark Printers. (View is from the bottom rear of the printer)

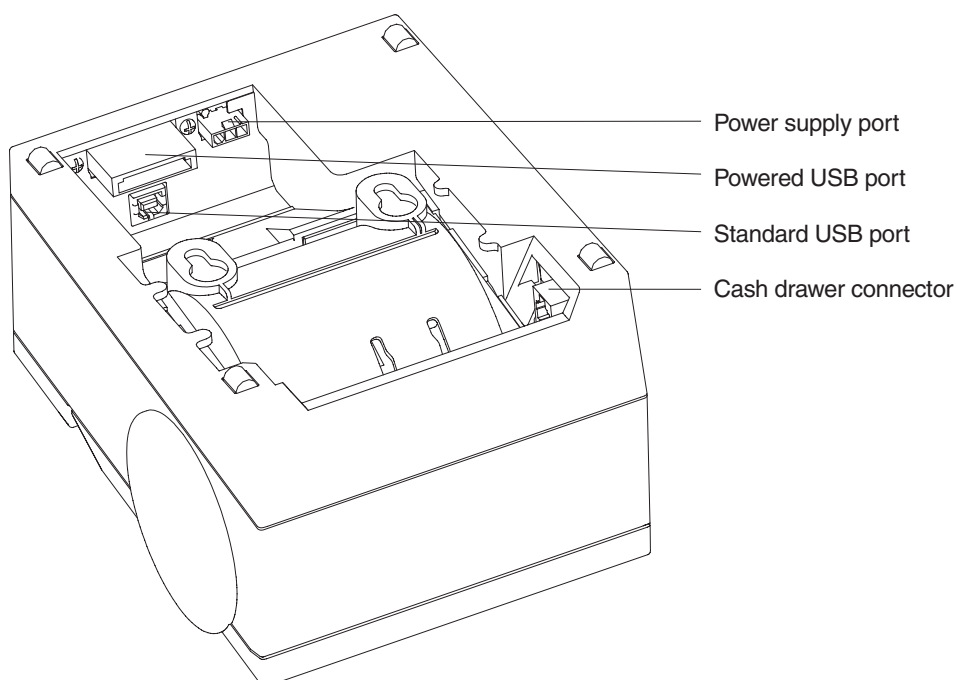


Figure 10. USB Ports for Single-Station SureMark Printers. (View is from the bottom rear of the printer)

3. For single-station printers, route any power cord and cables as shown in Figure 11.

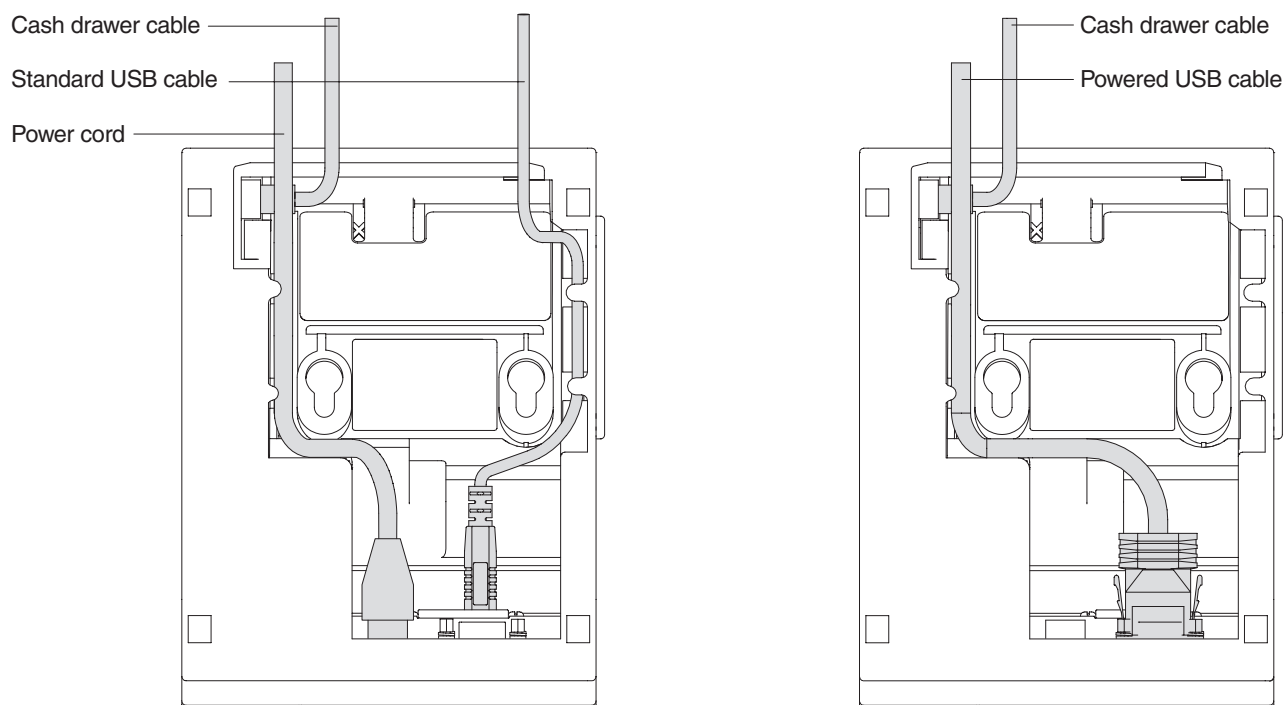


Figure 11. USB Cable Routing for Single-Station SureMark Printers

4. Connect the USB communication cable to the correct port.
5. Connect any other signal cables for I/O devices to the correct ports.

6. Check that all signal cables are installed and seated in the correct ports.
7. If you are installing the printer on an integrated SurePOS 700 Series system:
 - a. For single-station printers, place the printer in the square-shaped filler panel.
 - b. Route all cables attached to the printer through a rear opening of the system unit and place the printer (with its filler panel, if it is a single-station printer) on the system unit.
 - c. Make the side of the printer overlap the tab on the side of the system unit. (wide systems only)
 - d. If you have additional fillers to install, go to "Installing the fillers" on page 25.
 - e. If a fence or I/O tray is installed, lift the system unit rear cover and attach any cables from the printer to the system unit. (If a power brick was disconnected at the beginning of the installation or is needed because a standard USB cable is being used, attach the power brick.)
8. If you are using a power brick, power on the printer by connecting the power brick supply cable to a properly wired and grounded power source and powering it on.
9. For single-station SureMark printers, turn on the power on/off switch on the printer.
10. For thermal/impact printers, locate the ribbon cartridge and install it in the printer. (See "Ribbon loading" on page 51.) Be sure that the ribbon is routed through the printhead correctly.
11. Load the paper roll into the printer. See "Paper loading" on page 53 for thermal/impact SureMark printers or "Paper loading" on page 71 for single-station SureMark printers.
12. Installation is now complete. Go to Chapter 5, "Testing and problem analysis (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)," on page 61 for thermal/impact printers or Chapter 7, "Testing and problem analysis (Models TF6 and TM6)," on page 75 for single-station printers and run the offline tests.

Using the wall mounting feature

Because of their light weight and small footprint, the single-station SureMark printers can be mounted on a wall. This is a useful feature when counter space is limited.

To use the printer with the wall mounting feature:

1. Position the mounting bracket on a wall that has no dangerous objects, such as electrical wires or pipes, hidden beneath the wall surface.

Note: Position the bracket so that the installed printer will not extend more than 10 cm (4 in.) into a walk, hall, corridor, passageway or aisle.

2. Attach the bracket securely to the wall with four 6-mm (0.25-in.) screws. The screws are not provided. You should use fasteners that are suitable for the type of wall construction, such that the bracket is securely attached to the wall. For walls that are constructed of gypsum wallboard on wood or metal studs, use four good-quality medium-capacity or high-capacity hollow-wall anchors.
3. Route the communication cable up the wall surface or through the bracket.
4. Connect the cables to the printer.
5. Place the SureMark printer on the two bracket posts. Slide the printer down until a click sounds.

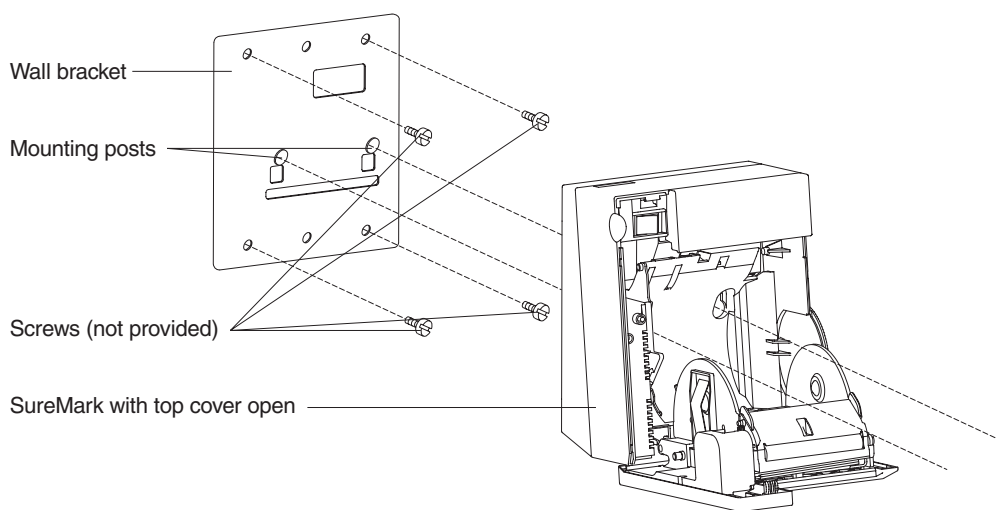


Figure 12. Mounting a Single-Station SureMark on a Wall

Installing the fillers

Installing fillers for RS-232/RS-485 printers

Notes:

1. On an integrated unit, pull out on the locking lever at the left side of system unit.
2. Ensure that the side of each filler overlaps the tab on the side of the system unit.

To install fillers:

1. Power the system off and disconnect the RS-232 power supply (if connected). See Figure 5 on page 18.
2. If you have a video display on an integrated system:
 - a. Move the display on its arm to the side and remove any tape holding the alignment ring.
 - b. Remove the knockout section of the display filler.
 - c. Align the display filler with the alignment ring and slide the filler onto the ring. Press the display filler into place. See Figure 13 on page 26.
3. If you do not have a video display, place the display filler on the system unit. **Do not remove** the knockout section. See Figure 13 on page 26.
4. If you have a short keyboard, place the keyboard filler beside the keyboard. See Figure 13 on page 26.
5. Place the printer filler beside the display filler. **Make sure you route the printer cable to the side, as shown in Figure 13 on page 26.**

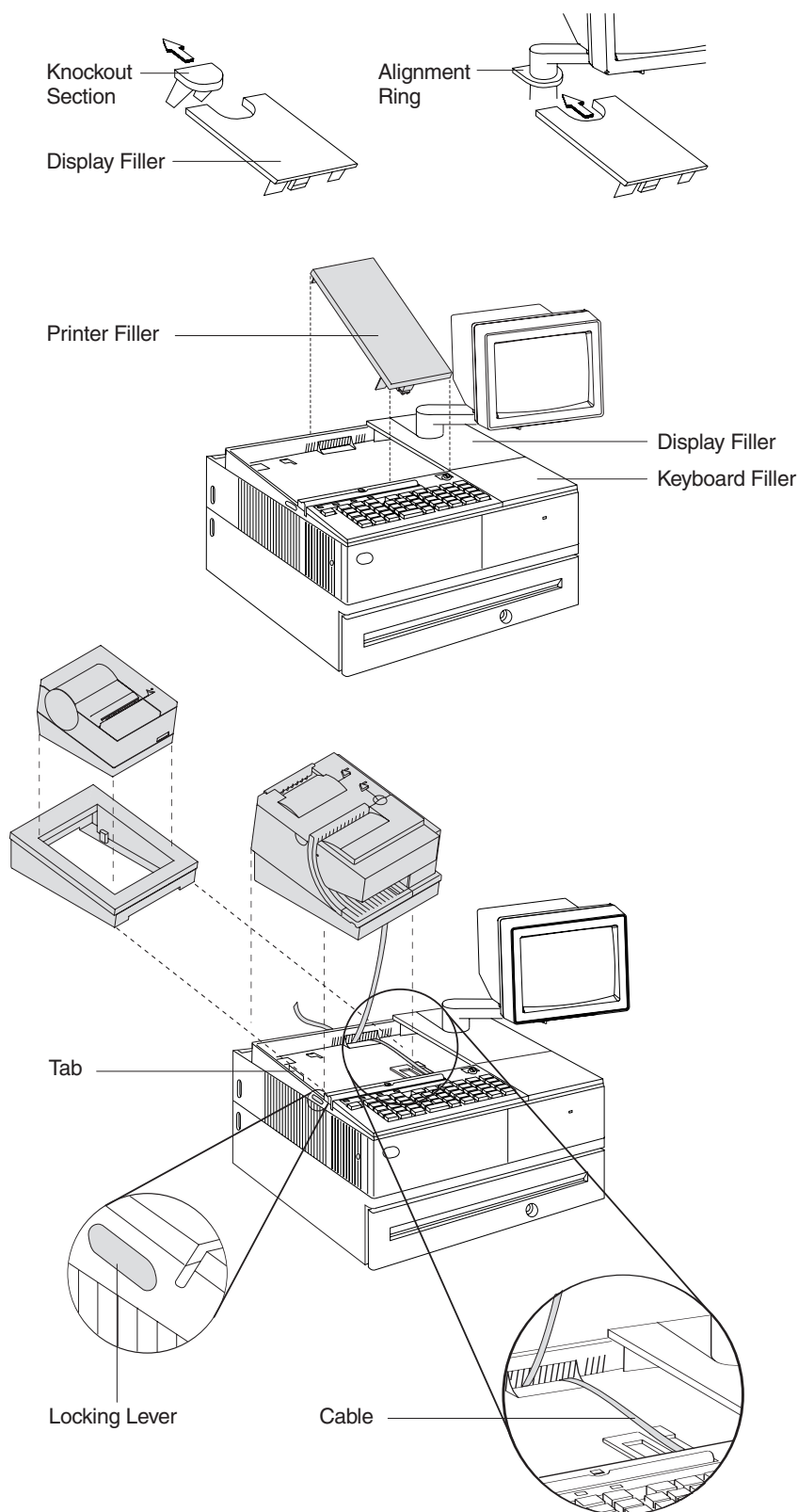


Figure 13. Installing the Fillers for RS-232/RS-485 Systems

Installing fillers for USB printers

1. Disconnect the power brick from the printer, if one is connected.
2. Place the display filler appropriate for the video display on the system unit. **Do not remove** the knockout section unless you have an integrated video mount. See Figure 14 on page 28.
3. If you have a short keyboard, place the keyboard filler beside the keyboard. See Figure 14 on page 28.
4. Place the printer filler beside the display filler. **Make sure you route the keyboard cable to the side, as shown in Figure 14 on page 28.**

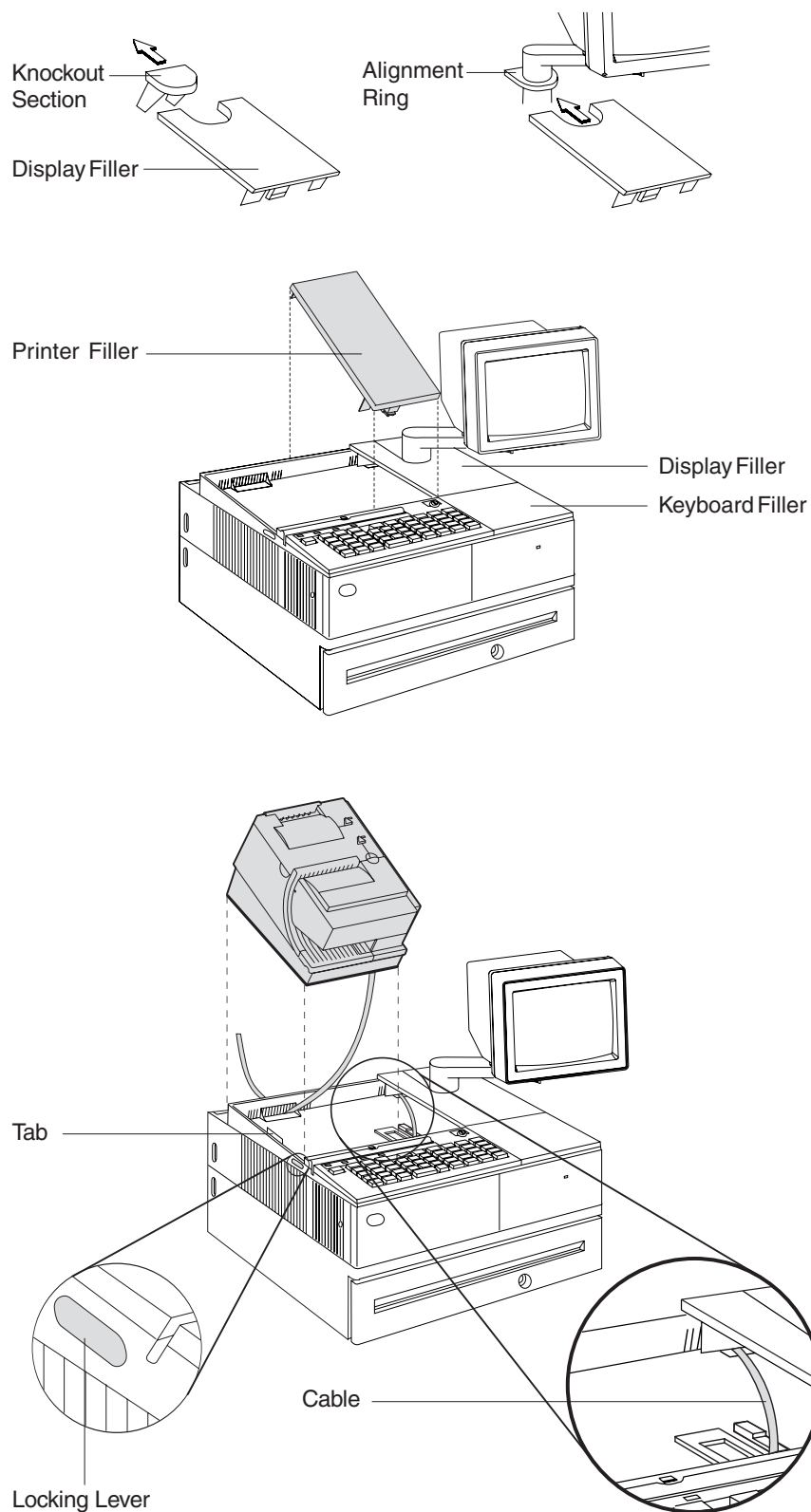


Figure 14. Installing the fillers for USB systems

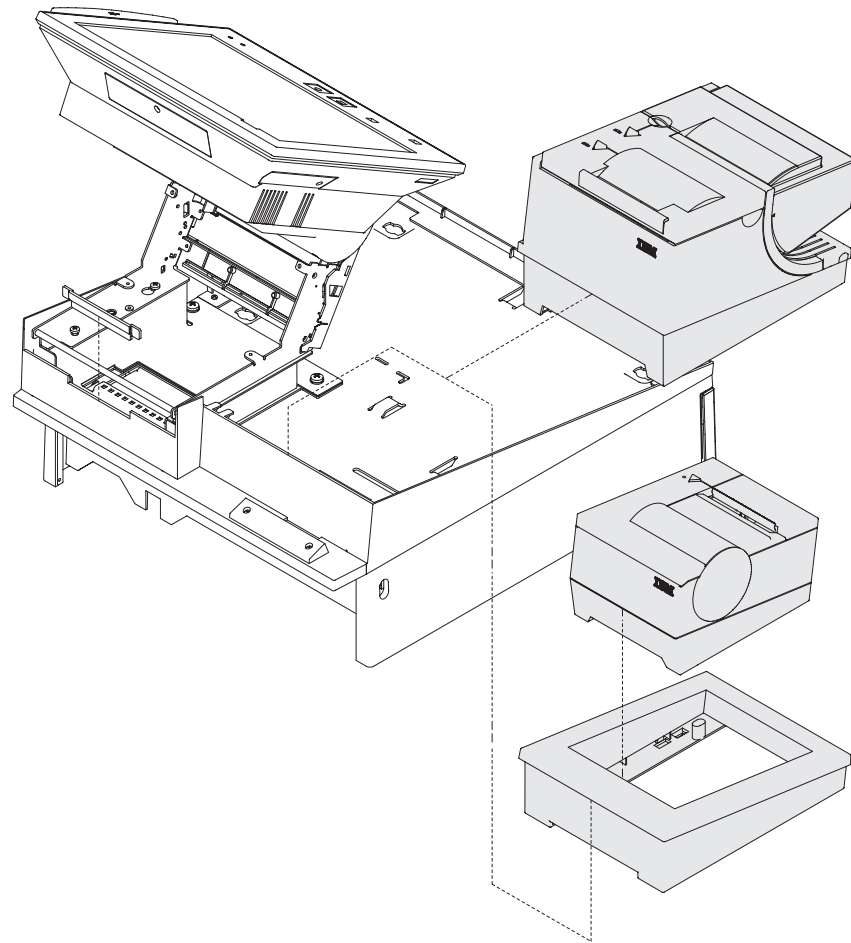


Figure 15. SurePOS 500/600 integration

RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except T18

Switch settings described in this section apply only when the printer is connected to the system with the RS-232 cable. The switch is accessible without removing the printer covers. (See Figure 5 on page 18 to see how to access the switch.)

Baud rate selection

SureMark printers support two RS-232 baud rates, 9600 and 19 200. The baud rate is selected using switch 1 on the RS-232 settings switch. Set the switch as follows:

Switch 1 OFF 9600 baud

Switch 1 ON 19 200 baud

The printer normally ships with switch 1 in the OFF position, which selects the 9600 baud rate.

RS-232 communications protocol selection

SureMark printers support RS-232 protocol using either DTR/DSR or XON/XOFF to control data transmission. XON/XOFF mode uses system and printer software to control the flow of data. This is called *flow control*.

Use switch 2 on the RS-232 settings switch to select the mode. Switch settings are:

Switch 2 OFF DTR/DSR control

Switch 2 ON XON/XOFF control (must use with a 3-wire interface)

The printer normally ships with switch 2 in the OFF position, which selects DTR/DSR control.

DTR/DSR control

DSR definition: DSR is an output from the printer. It indicates when the printer is ready to receive data.

DTR definition: DTR is an input to the printer. It indicates to the printer that the system is ready to receive data.

DSR operation: A DSR signal becomes inactive when the printer is not ready to receive data (for example, at power-on reset or when its buffer is full).

DTR operation: A DTR signal becomes inactive when the system is not ready to receive data (for example, at power-on reset or when its buffer is full).

XON/XOFF control

XON definition: = DC1 (X'11')

XOFF definition: = DC3 (X'13')

During XON/XOFF control, the printer transmits an XON every 3 seconds after a power on reset (POR) completes to indicate the printer is ready to receive data. When the first message is received, the printer stops transmitting the XON signal. The printer transmits an XOFF when the RS-232 input buffer is 80% full after which it transmits one XON when the buffer is 20% full.

XON/XOFF transparent mode operation

This is the default mode. See “Message from the printer” on page 165 for the format of printer to system messages, which include a byte count, status bytes, and optional extended status bytes or user data.

Transparent mode should always be used when selecting XON/XOFF mode for Model T18.

XON and XOFF are transmitted independently, and can occur at any point inside or outside of messages transmitted by the printer. When a message includes optional user data, the byte count (bytes 1 and 2) can include X'10', X'11', or X'13'. When X'10', X'11', or X'13' occur in transparent XON/XOFF mode, the byte count is bit-exclusive-OR'ed with X'21' and is prefixed by the DLE (X'10') character to become:

Value in message	Becomes
X'10'	X'1031'
X'11'	X'1030'
X'13'	X'1032'

User data with X'10', X'11', or X'13' is also treated this way in transparent XON/XOFF mode. The byte count is not incremented for such extra characters.

Determining XON/XOFF control

You can determine whether XON/XOFF control is being used by sending the extended address command and checking the feature byte, bit 3. If this bit is set, the printer is in XON/XOFF mode. (See “Extended address command—request printer ID” on page 109.

Disabling XON/XOFF transparent mode

You can disable transparent XON/XOFF mode as described in “Real-time requests” on page 161. When disabled, X'10', X'11', or X'13' can occur within messages. However, because such values are actual count bytes or data bytes and are not XON or XOFF characters (DLE, XON, and XOFF characters do not occur within messages), no transform takes place. The values are not bit-exclusive-OR'ed with X'21' because no transform occurs for such values within messages as it does during transparent XON/XOFF mode. DLE, XON, or XOFF occur only before or after a message.

RS-232 communication mode selections — Model Tl8

Settings described in this section apply only when the printer is connected to the system with the RS-232 cable.

Baud rate selection

You must have power ON and paper installed in the thermal print station.

1. Open both the document cover and the receipt cover.
2. Press and hold both operator buttons until the Customer Receipt (CR) light blinks rapidly.
3. Close the Document Insert (DI) cover. This is the front cover.
4. Close the CR cover. This is the rear cover. A menu is printed on the CR paper.
5. Follow the instructions on the menu to set the baud rate and the communication protocol. The information provided in "RS-232 communications protocol selection" describes the selections and their purposes.

RS-232 communications protocol selection

SureMark printers support the RS-232 protocol using either DTR/DSR or XON/XOFF to control data transmission. XON/XOFF mode uses system and printer software to control the flow of data. This is called *flow control*.

DTR/DSR control:

DSR definition

DSR is an output from the printer. It indicates when the printer is ready to receive data.

DTR definition

DTR is an input to the printer. It indicates to the printer that the system is ready to receive data.

DSR operation

A DSR signal becomes inactive when the printer is not ready to receive data (for example, at power-on reset [POR] or when its buffer is full).

DTR operation

A DTR signal becomes inactive when the system is not ready to receive data (for example, at power-on reset or when its buffer is full).

XON/XOFF control:

XON definition:

= DC1 (X'11')

XOFF definition:

= DC3 (X'13')

During XON/XOFF control, the printer transmits an XON every 3 seconds after a POR completes to indicate the printer is ready to receive data. When the first message is received, the printer stops transmitting the XON signal. The printer transmits an XOFF when the RS-232 input buffer is 80% full after which it transmits one XON when the buffer is 20% full.

XON/XOFF transparent mode operation

This is the default mode. See “Message from the printer” on page 165 for the format of printer to system messages, which include a byte count, status bytes, and optional extended status bytes or user data.

XON and XOFF signals are always transmitted independently and are not inside any part of the message, including the byte count, status bytes, or user data. When a message includes optional user data, the byte count (bytes 1 and 2) can include X'10', X'11', or X'13'. When X'10', X'11', or X'13' occur in transparent XON/XOFF mode, the byte count is bit-exclusive-OR'ed with X'21' and is prefixed by the DLE (X'10') character to become:

Value in message	Becomes
X'10'	X'1031'
X'11'	X'1030'
X'13'	X'1032'

User data with X'10', X'11', or X'13' is also treated this way in transparent XON/XOFF mode. The byte count is not incremented for such extra characters.

Determining XON/XOFF control

You can determine whether or not XON/XOFF control is being used by sending the extended address command and checking bit 3 of the feature byte. If this bit is set, the printer is in XON/XOFF mode. (See “Extended address command—request printer ID” on page 109.

Disabling XON/XOFF transparent mode

You can disable transparent XON/XOFF mode as described in “Real-time requests” on page 161. When disabled, X'10', X'11', or X'13' can occur within messages. The values are not bit-exclusive-OR'ed with X'21' because no transform occurs for such values within messages as it does during transparent XON/XOFF mode.

Note: Disabling XON/XOFF transparent mode should be done with Model TI4 only. It is not recommended for Model TI8.

USB communication mode

No switches or special commands are required for USB communication. With the USB interface card and cables in place, the system automatically detects the printer when it is attached and performs any necessary setup. The printer operates at data rates up to 12 Mbps.

USB selection

Universal serial bus (USB) is an industry standard communication interface. It is used to attach devices, such as printers, displays, and keyboards, to personal computers or IBM POS systems that have USB ports. The standard USB port (with a power brick) is used to attach the SureMark to personal computers. The powered USB port is used to attach the SureMark to IBM POS systems. See Figure 9 on page 21 for the thermal/impact SureMark printers and Figure 10 on page 22 for the single-station SureMark printers.

Chapter 3. SureMark installation, service, and utility software

Software adjustments (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	35
Using IBM Point-of-Sale device diagnostics	35
Using the reference/service diskettes (RS-485 or RS-232 printers)	36
4610 Fonts and Logos utility diskette	38
Proportional font conversion utility	38
Firmware update	38
Using a firmware update diskette	39
Using POSS for Windows to update SureMark printer firmware (RS-485 and USB only)	39
IBM Point-of-Sale device diagnostics	40
Updating SureMark firmware using temporary RS-232 attachment	40
Limitation on updating firmware	41
Emulating the IBM Model 3 or Model 4 printers	41
Enabling emulation using utility diskettes	41
Limitations for emulation	42
Printing saved data	42
Printing buffer data – thermal/impact printers	42
Printing buffer data – single-station printers	43
Emulating an Epson single-station printer (single-station only)	43
Enabling Epson emulation	43
Limitations for Epson emulation	44
MICR data parser sample code (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)	44
Resources on the Internet	44

This chapter describes how to make software adjustments using either the IBM Point-of-Sale Device Diagnostics (POSS for Windows, RS-485 and USB only) or diskettes and other resources that are available from the Retail Store Solutions Web site. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for more information.

Software adjustments (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)

Depending on your operating system, you can use the following to make software adjustments to the impact (document insert) station of a SureMark printer:

- IBM POS Device Diagnostics
- Reference/service diskettes

Using IBM Point-of-Sale device diagnostics

This utility is for RS-485 and USB only.

1. Start the IBM Point-of-Sale Device Diagnostics application from the Windows Start menu.
2. Click **4610 Printer**.
3. Click **Device Utility**.
4. Select the appropriate tab for the desired adjustment (see Table 2 on page 36).

Table 2. Adjustment procedures using the Point-of-Sale Device Diagnostics

Procedure	Tab
Character Alignment	Adjustments
DI Front Load Adjustment	Adjustments
Backlash Adjustment (Landscape)	Adjustments
Engineering Use Only	Read MCT
Firmware Update	Firmware Update
Reset Thermal Print Head Statistics	Reset Stats
Reset CR Motor Statistics	Reset Stats
Reset Impact Print Head Statistics	Reset Stats
Reset DI Motor Statistics	Reset Stats
Reset Transport Motor Statistics	Reset Stats

Using the reference/service diskettes (RS-485 or RS-232 printers)

1. Load the reference/service diskette. See the hardware service manual for your system for reference/service diskette procedures.
 2. Select **Test Menu**.
 3. Select **Run POS Device Tests** for an RS-485 connection. Select **RS232 4610 Printer Test** for an RS-232 connection.
 4. If another system is attached, select the system whose printer you want to adjust. This is unnecessary when there is no other system attached.
 5. Select **Printer Utilities**.
 6. Select the adjustment you want to make from the menu.
 - Print current adjustment values - see Figure 16 on page 37.
 - Character alignment procedure - see Figure 16 on page 37.
 - DI front load print line adjustment - see Figure 16 on page 37.
 - Document landscape adjustment - see Figure 16 on page 37.
 - Engineering use only
 - Change 4610 Model Configuration
 - Reset printer statistics
- Note:** Because the first four adjustments affect only the document insert station, they are not displayed as selectable options if the printer is a single-station SureMark.
7. Follow the instructions that are printed on the printer or displayed on the screen.
 8. Press **S1** (Esc on the Enhanced A/N Keyboard) to return to the previous menu.

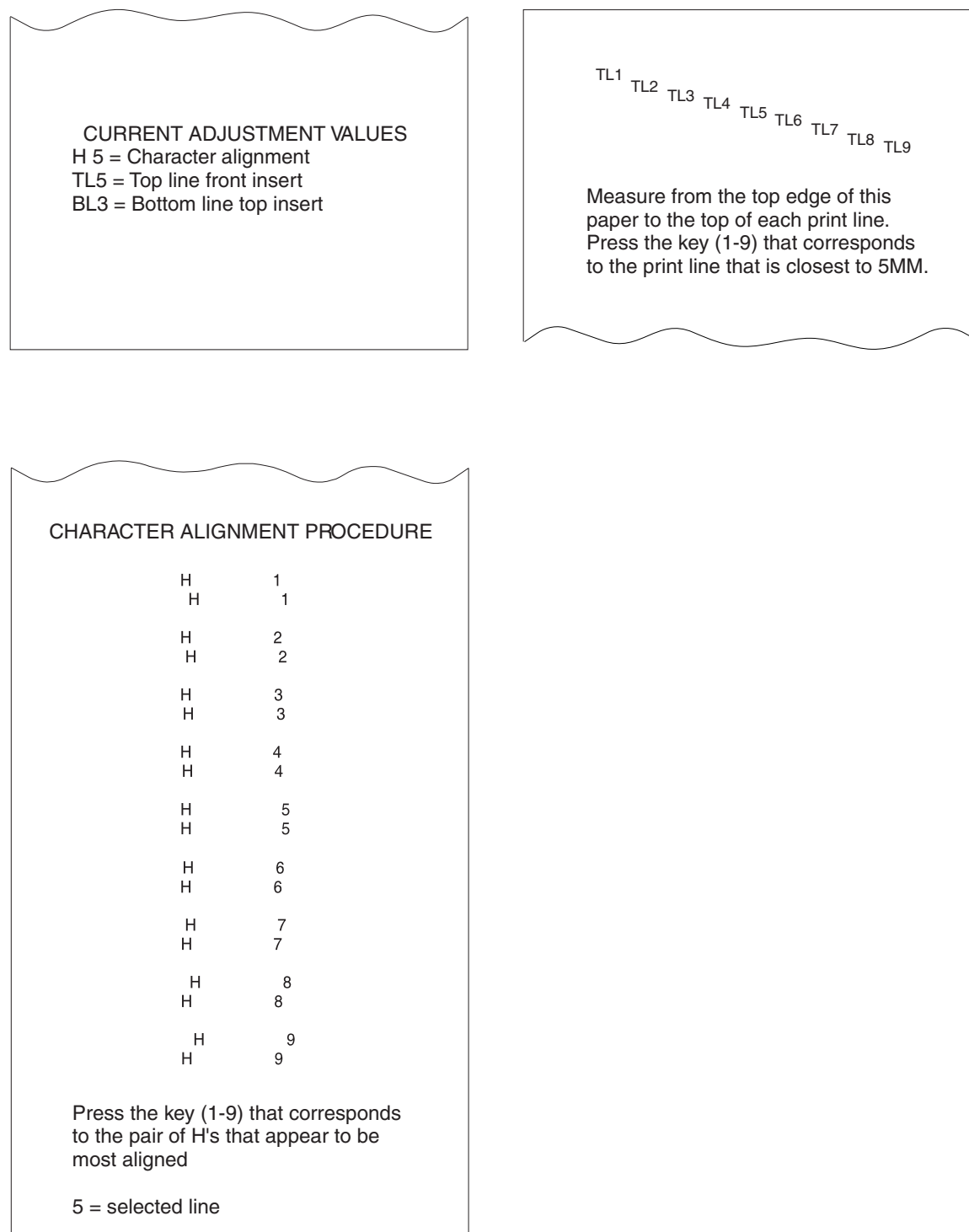


Figure 16. Adjustment and Alignment Printouts

4610 Fonts and Logos utility diskette

This utility is for both RS-232 and RS-485 operation. You can download the utility from the Retail Store Solutions Web site. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for more information.

The utility program allows you to perform the following functions:

- Update printer firmware
- Configure the printer model
- Create, edit, and download user-defined character fonts, logo images, and messages
- Download proportional fonts (not supported for Models T11 and T12)
- Convert fonts and logo files from impact to thermal

From the same Web site, you can also download the following sample files for use with the utility program:

- User-defined characters file
- Message file
- Logo file

Proportional font conversion utility

As part of its support for proportional fonts, IBM provides three TrueType fonts and a utility that you can use to convert the fonts to files that the SureMark printer can use.

The application and instructions for downloading the converted fonts are available from the Retail Store Solutions Web site. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for more information.

Note: You might have TrueType fonts other than those supplied by IBM on your system. Before using the conversion utility to convert and download any non-IBM fonts for use by the SureMark printer, you **must** confirm that you have received authorization from the owner of the fonts to convert and download the fonts.

Firmware update

The SureMark printer has the capability to receive SureMark firmware updates from the host system unit to which it is attached for either RS-485 attached, RS-232, or USB-attached SureMark printers.

The following mediums can be used to update the SureMark firmware:

- Firmware update diskettes
- POSS for Windows 4610 Printer Firmware Update Program
- Alternative 4610 firmware update method via RS-232 attachment cable

Use the appropriate procedure that follows to update the SureMark firmware, after downloading the latest level software from the Retail Store Solutions Web site (see “Resources on the Internet” on page 44).

Using a firmware update diskette

Use a firmware update diskette to update the firmware in configurations when the SureMark is attached by either an RS-232 or RS-485 cable, and the system has a floppy diskette drive, a PC keyboard, and display.

1. Download the latest level of firmware update diskette from the Web (see “Resources on the Internet” on page 44). You can select from several update methods, including attended, unattended, and automatic.
2. Insert the firmware update diskette in drive A.
3. Power on the system unit that has the SureMark attached by either an RS-232 or RS-485 cable.
4. Select RS-485 or RS-232 connection.
5. Follow the messages displayed to complete the firmware update.
 - a. Press **Enter** (OK) at the logo screen to proceed.
 - b. Choose connection type (RS-485 or RS-232). For RS-232 connections, also make the following selections (refer to the communications mode selections switches, located on the bottom rear of the SureMark printer, to determine the following selections):
 - Communications port (COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4)
 - Baud Rate (9600 or 19 200)
 - Control Flow (DTR/DSR or XON/XOFF)
 - c. Press **Enter** (OK) to proceed.
 - d. Press **F10** (Menu).
 - e. Select **O** (Operations).
 - f. Select **A** (Advanced Options).
 - g. Select **U** (Update Firmware).
 - h. Press **Enter** twice to select the desired firmware image file (usually only the latest firmware image file is available for selection).
 - i. Press **Enter** (YES) again to commit to firmware update.
 - j. The Information screen will display the update percent completed.
- Note:** The SureMark flash update will take several minutes. Do NOT power off the host system or the SureMark printer after the update has started.
6. After the firmware update is complete, the SureMark printer will be reset.
 - a. Press **Enter** (OK) to confirm.
 - b. Press **Alt-X** (Exit).
 - c. Press **Enter** to exit.
7. Remove the diskette from drive A.
8. Press **Ctrl-Alt-Del** to reboot the system.

Using POSS for Windows to update SureMark printer firmware (RS-485 and USB only)

Windows users with SureMark printers can use the POSS for Windows 4610 Printer Firmware Update program (AIPFLD46.EXE) to update SureMark firmware. For additional information, refer to the *POSS Programming Reference and User's Guide*.

Note: POSS Suite V1.0.0 or greater is required to use this utility.

1. Download the latest SureMark firmware update image file from the Web. The file is:
 - AIP46MC.HEX for Models TI1 and TI2
 - AIP46MCH.HEX for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4. This file is also for single-station printers with 512KB or 8MB of memory
 - AIP46MCD.HEX for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6 with the 2-MB memory option.
 - For Model TI8, see the IBM Retail Store Solutions Web site at: <http://www.ibm.com/solutions/retail/store>.
2. Copy the latest SureMark firmware update image file to the C:\POS\BIN directory. Because the file in the directory is more current than the old file, the firmware will be automatically updated when the system is powered off and back on.
3. To update the firmware manually, enter the following command to update the SureMark firmware:
`AIPFLD46.EXE -S slot_number -P port_number -F microcode_file [-Q]`
 where:
slot_number
 SureMark slot number, usually = 1. The slot number must be specified with decimal values only; hexadecimal values are not accepted.
port_number
 SureMark port number specified with a decimal value, usually = 17
microcode_file
 Either C:\POS\BIN\AIP46MC.HEX, C:\POS\BIN\AIP46MCH.HEX, or C:\POS\BIN\AIP46MCD.HEX
-Q Quiet mode installation (no progress information)
4. The SureMark flash update will take several minutes.

IBM Point-of-Sale device diagnostics

USB printers connected to one of the SurePOS 700 Series systems can use the IBM Point-of-Sale Device Diagnostics to update the SureMark firmware. See *IBM SurePOS 700 Series: System Reference* for more information on the IBM Point-of-Sale Device Diagnostics.

Updating SureMark firmware using temporary RS-232 attachment

To use the firmware update diskettes to update SureMark firmware for configurations that do **not** have a floppy diskette drive and PC display and keyboard, you must provide a temporary RS-232 attachment to a host PC that does have a floppy diskette drive.

Note: A 4610 firmware update diskette at V3.10 or greater is required to use this utility.

Before starting the firmware update, you must obtain the following parts:

- RS-232 attachment cable, either 2 meters in length (P/N 86H2192) or 4 meters in length (P/N 86H2195).
- SureMark Power Supply (for RS-232 configurations only), P/N 42H1176.

If the SureMark is currently attached to a host system unit that does not support a floppy diskette drive, use the following procedure to temporarily connect the printer to a host PC that has a floppy diskette drive, RS-232 port, PC keyboard and display.

1. Disconnect the SureMark (RS-485 #7) attachment cable and temporarily connect a RS-232 attachment cable to the SureMark.
2. Connect the SureMark via the RS-232 port connector to an alternate host PC that has a floppy diskette drive.
3. Follow the procedure in "Using a firmware update diskette" on page 39, starting with Step 1, to complete the SureMark firmware update.
4. Reconnect the SureMark to the original host system unit using the original attachment cables.

Limitation on updating firmware

The following limitation must be considered when updating firmware on the SureMark printer:

- SureMark firmware update cannot be performed if the printer currently has Model 4 emulation enabled. If emulation is enabled, temporarily disable Model 4 emulation, then start the SureMark firmware update. After the firmware update is complete, re-enable Model 4 emulation. See "Emulating the IBM Model 3 or Model 4 printers" for additional information.

Emulating the IBM Model 3 or Model 4 printers

It is possible to emulate the IBM Model 3 or Model 4 printer with the SureMark printer. You must change the configuration to enable the SureMark to emulate the Model 3 or Model 4 printers.

To set up Model 3 or Model 4 emulation, use the Fonts and Logos Utility Diskette or the Configure MCT Utility Diskette (see "Enabling emulation using utility diskettes"). Download the latest level diskette from the Retail Store Solutions Web site. See "Resources on the Internet" on page 44 for more information.

Enabling emulation using utility diskettes

The following information is also available in the **4610MOD4.TXT** file on the diskette.

Note: All SureMark firmware levels for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6 support emulation.

To set up Model 3 or Model 4 emulation using the Font and Logos Utility Diskette or the Configure MCT Utility Diskette:

1. Insert the utility diskette in drive A.
2. Power on the system unit.
3. Select **MOD4** when the menu is displayed.
4. Perform the specified steps to either enable or disable emulation.

To enable when emulation is currently disabled:

1. Select one of the following:
 - Model 4 emulation with Offline mode disabled
 - Model 4 emulation with Offline mode enabled

The printer is reconfigured.

2. Press **Ctrl-Alt-Delete** to reboot the system. The system IPLs.

To disable when emulation is currently enabled:

1. Select Disable Model 4 emulation.
2. Enter **Ctrl-Alt-Delete** to reboot the system. The system IPLs.

Limitations for emulation

The following limitations must be considered when using the SureMark printer to emulate the Model 3 or Model 4 printer.

- Printing the face of checks requires application changes (franking the back of checks should not).
- Printing wide documents may require changes. The document station on the Model 4 printer supports 86 characters, the SureMark supports 47 characters.
- Journal commands can be ignored or stored in the printer's flash memory. This needs to be decided when the printer is initially configured.
- There is no top document registration (documents must be inserted from the front).
- User-defined special characters are not supported.
- Because SureMark Models TF6 and TM6 do not have a document insert station, they do not emulate document station commands.
- Emulation mode does not support the Model 4A double-byte character set.
- For RS-485, emulation mode is currently only supported on 4690 OS and DOS systems. For USB, emulation mode is currently only supported on 4690 OS. Emulation is not supported for RS-232.
- On the DI portrait station, 1 inch = 51 motor steps (1mm = 2 steps). This is different than model 3 or 4 printer, where 1 inch = 48 steps.

Printing saved data

When the printer is offline in Model 3/4 emulation mode and the option for storing data to the printer was selected, it is possible to fill up the printer flash memory. When the memory is full, a printer error indicates the journal station is out of paper. You can empty the printer buffer by printing out the data that is stored in the flash memory. The data prints on the customer receipt station. The data in the buffer is erased only after the last line of data is printed.

Note: If the SureMark has the 2-MB option installed, up to 3 rolls of paper might be needed to print all the electronic journal data.

You can upload electronic journal while in Model 4 emulation mode. See Appendix D, "Uploading electronic journal data," on page 185 for detailed information.

Printing buffer data – thermal/impact printers

To print the buffer data from the beginning:

1. Press and hold both buttons. When the printer ready indicator begins blinking, release both buttons.
2. Press and release both buttons again.

Notes:

1. If the SureMark printer encounters an error (for example, the paper runs out or the cover is opened) while printing the data, the data remains intact.

2. To stop printing the data, open and close the ribbon cover. When you are ready to print the data, use the procedure above to restart printing from the beginning.
3. To stop printing and restart at the current position, open and close the paper cover. Printing immediately restarts.

Printing buffer data – single-station printers

To print the buffer data from the beginning:

1. Open the top cover. The LED will flash quickly.
2. Press and hold the paper feed button for 5 seconds.
3. The LED will show one short blink, accompanied by a beep, followed by a 1-second pause.
4. Press and hold the paper feed button for 5 seconds.
5. The LED will change to a long blink. The beeper will sound continuously.
6. Close the cover to begin printing the electronic journal data.

Notes:

1. If the SureMark printer encounters an error (for example, the paper runs out or the cover is opened) while printing the data, the data remains intact.
2. To stop printing the data, open the top cover, turn the printer power switch ON, turn the printer power switch OFF, and close the top cover. When you are ready to print the data, use the procedure above to restart printing from the beginning.
3. To stop printing and restart at the current position, open and close the top cover. Printing immediately restarts.
4. Pressing and releasing the paper feed button a third time before closing the top cover will cause the printer to return to normal mode.

Emulating an Epson single-station printer (single-station only)

Emulation of an Epson single-station printer is supported on the single-station SureMark printers. See Appendix F, “Emulation support for Epson single-station printer,” on page 191.

Enabling Epson emulation

To enable emulation of an Epson single-station printer on a single-station SureMark printer, you must set switch 3 on the main logic card. See Figure 17 on page 44 for the location of the switch.

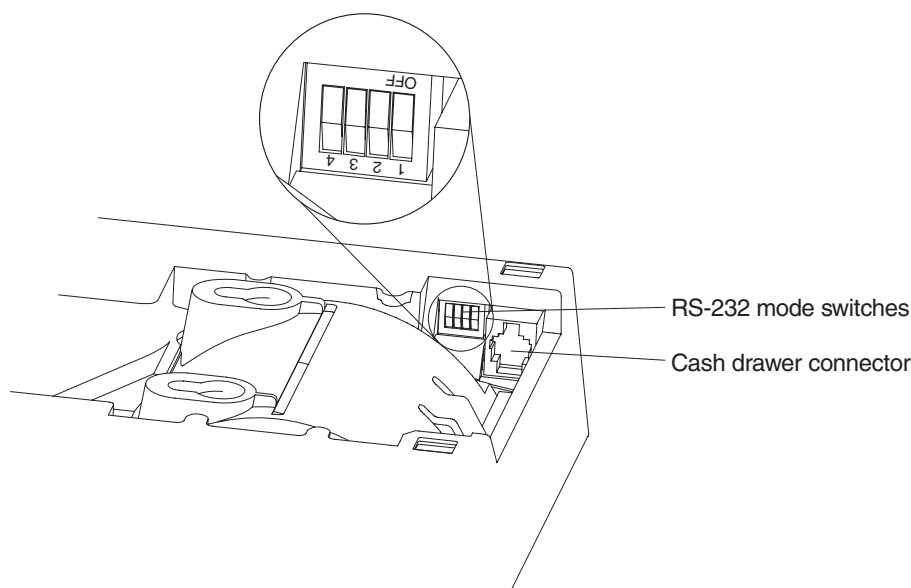


Figure 17. Switch for Epson Emulation

Limitations for Epson emulation

The following limitations must be considered when using a single-station SureMark printer to emulate an Epson single-station printer:

- Logos and downloadable characters are supported in emulation mode. However, because the Epson printer prints at 150 dpi and the SureMark prints at 200 dpi, the emulated printout will be smaller.
- Emulation of page mode is not supported on the SureMark.
- Epson supports the *Select paper sensor to stop printing* command. IBM does not support a low paper sensor.

MICR data parser sample code (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)

The MICR data parser download package includes:

- Sample source code (in C) that contains algorithms for parsing MICR data from a check.
- An exception data file that is used with the parsing code. You can edit this file to add new check formats, if necessary.

Refer to the README file in this download package for additional information.

Resources on the Internet

The IBM Retail Store Solutions Web site at <http://www.ibm.com/solutions/retail/store> contains publications for the SureMark Printer. The Web site also provides access to diskettes, drivers, and miscellaneous documentation, such as README files and information about OEM papers that have been certified.

Select **Support** at the left on the main page of the Web site, then select **IBM SureMark Printer**. The displayed page contains links both to documentation and to diskettes and drivers that you can download for the SureMark printers.

Part 2. Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4

This part contains operational, testing, and problem determination information for the thermal/impact SureMark printers - models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4.

Chapter 4. Operation (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)

Operating controls and indicators	47
Ribbon loading	51
Paper loading	53
Clearing jams in the check flipper area	55
MICR read head cleaning	57
Thermal printhead cleaning	58
Document scanner cleaning (Model TI8)	58
Document scanner calibration (Model TI8)	59

Note: All covers **must** be installed on the SureMark printer during operation.

Operating controls and indicators

There are two triangular-shaped buttons and two LED indicators located on top of the printer. The buttons serve multiple functions.

When the topmost indicator is on continuously, the printer is powered ON and ready for printing. When the indicator blinks, one of the following conditions exists:

- The printer is out of paper.
- The cover is open.
- The printer is offline.
- The printer has a nonrecoverable home error.

The second LED is the Document Present indicator. It lights when a document is inserted far enough into the document insert (DI) station to reach the DI sensor. When this LED blinks, the DI station is waiting for you to insert a document.

The topmost button is the customer receipt (CR) paper feed button. Press this button to advance the CR paper. The lower button is the document feed button. Press this button to advance the document.

If you press both buttons at the same time and then release them, the document insert throat opens. The throat must be open to insert a document from the side. Press and then release both buttons again to close the throat.

Both buttons are also used to test the printer. See "Offline tests" on page 62 for additional button functions.

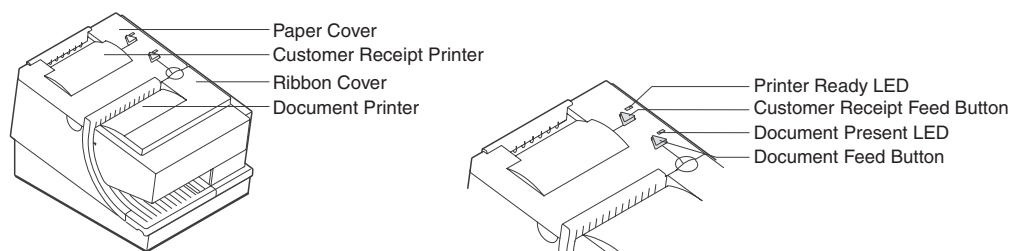


Figure 18. SureMark Printer - Indicators, Controls, and Printing Stations (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)

The printer is capable of printing verification information on a check and printing information on an inserted document. Figure 19 shows the correct positioning of the check in a Model TI2, TI4, TI8, or TG4 printer. It also shows how to side load a document to align it exactly where you want it to be printed. Note that for side loading with Model TI8, the document must be placed lower than with the other models.

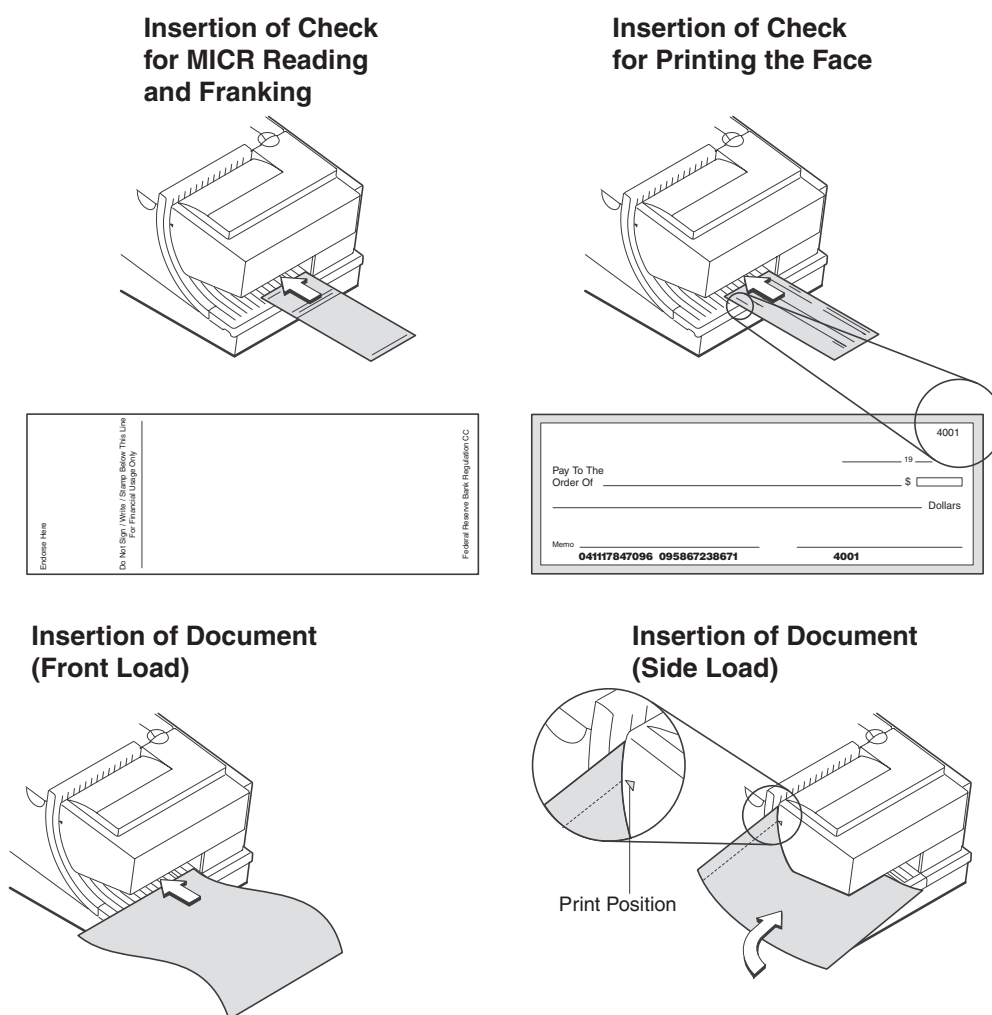


Figure 19. Inserting Checks or Documents in a Model TI2, TI4, TI8, or TG4 Printer

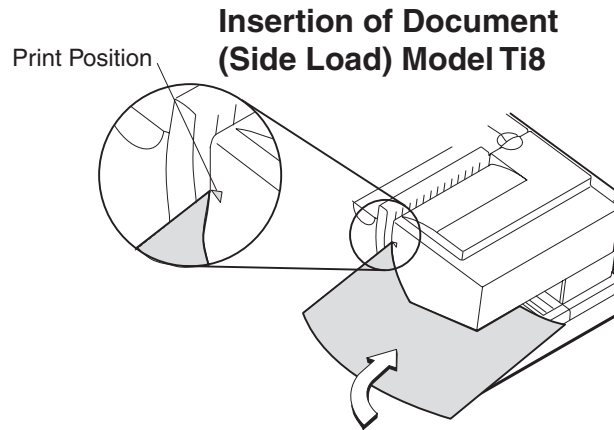


Figure 20. Side insertion of Documents in a Model Ti8 Printer

Figure 21 and Figure 22 on page 50 show the printable area on an inserted document for both portrait and landscape.

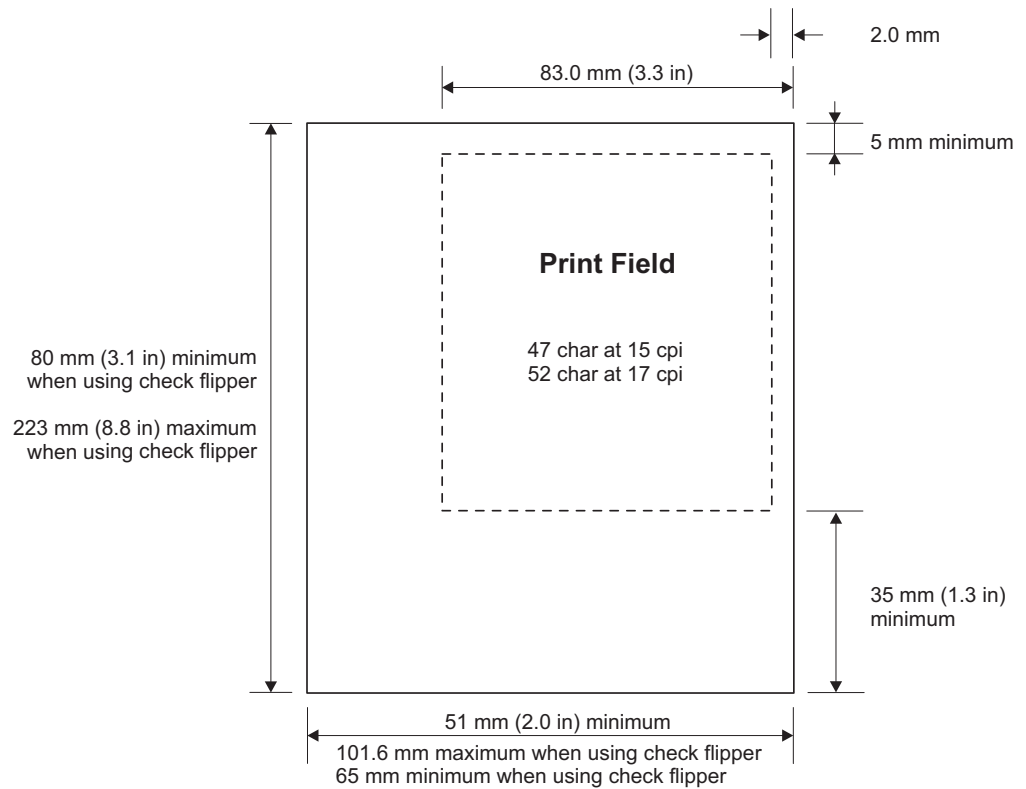


Figure 21. Printable Area of an Inserted Document (Portrait)

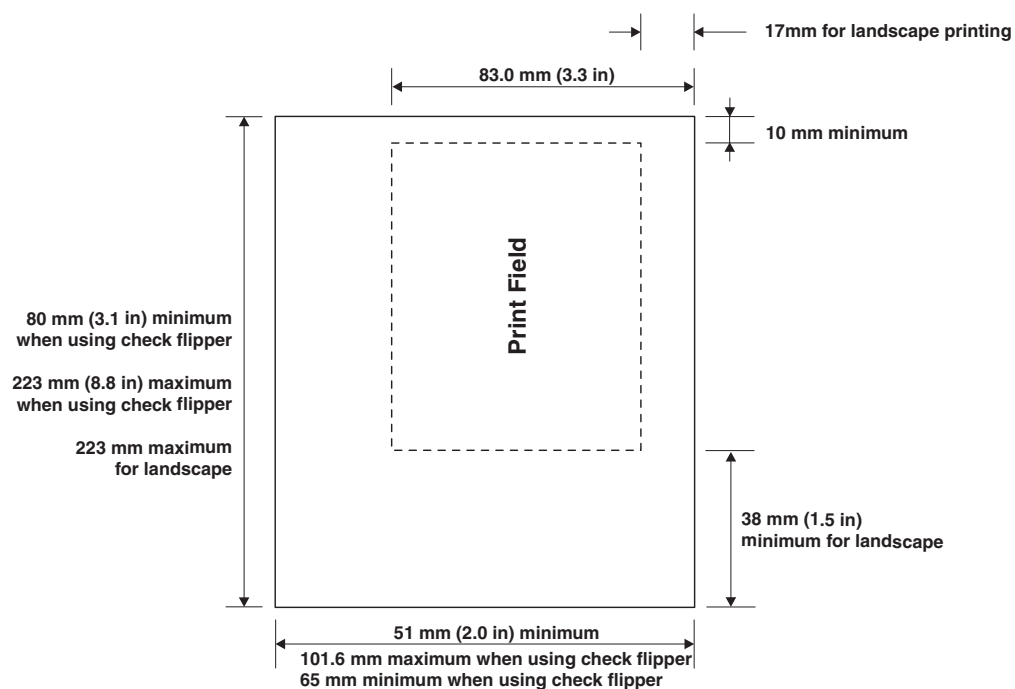


Figure 22. Printable Area of an Inserted Document (Landscape)

Ribbon loading

1. Open the ribbon cover. As the cover is opened, the printhead moves to a position where you can easily load a ribbon.

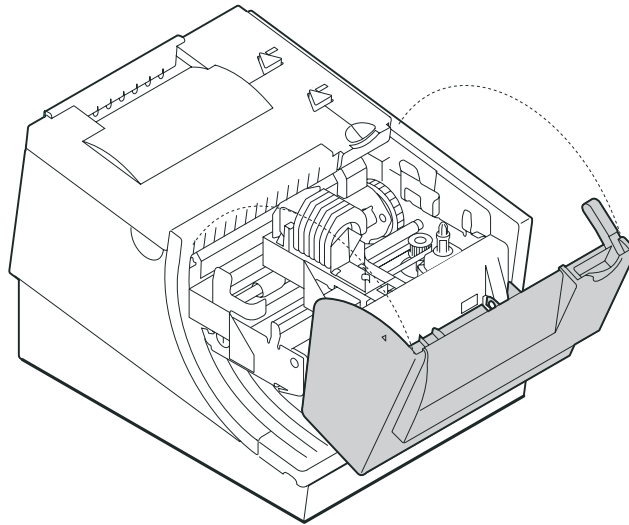


Figure 23. Opening the Ribbon Cover

2. If there is already a ribbon cartridge installed, remove it by lifting it straight up.

Note: You might need to grasp the body of the cartridge rather than the top to remove it.

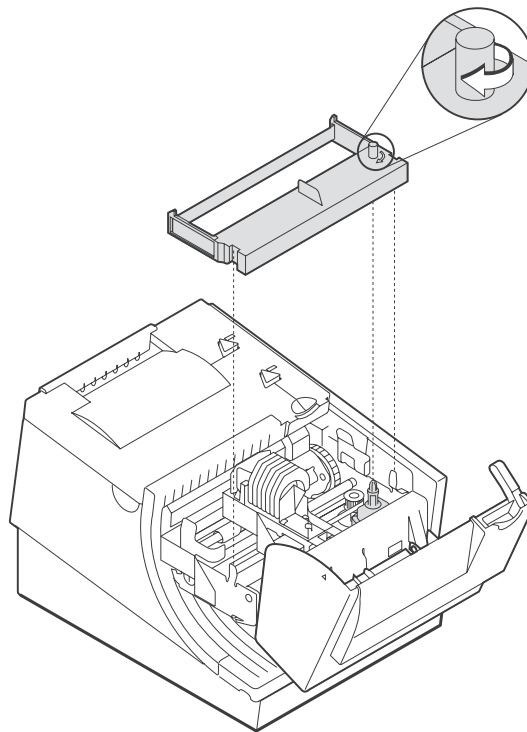


Figure 24. Ribbon Cartridge Loading

3. Maintain ribbon tension by turning the ribbon cartridge knob as shown in Figure 24 on page 51. Lower the cartridge into position until the notches on its sides snap into place on the printer guides. Once the cartridge is in place, turn the knob until the ribbon slides into place between the printhead and the ribbon shield. See Figure 25 for correct ribbon positioning.

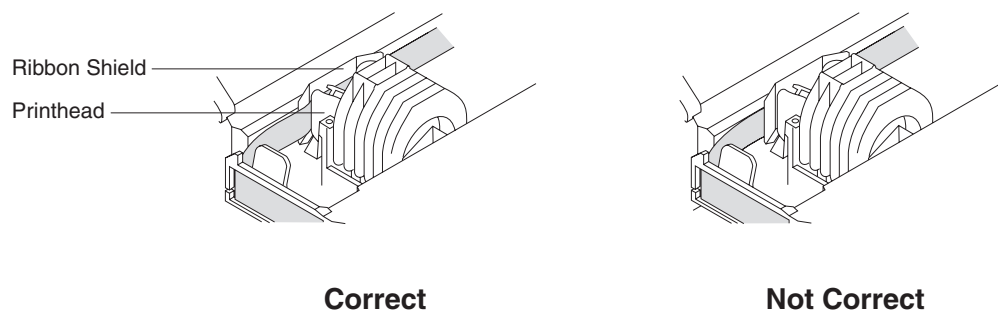


Figure 25. Ribbon Path around the Printhead

4. Close the ribbon cover.

Paper loading

1. Open the paper cover.
2. If there is any unused paper or if there is an empty paper roll core in the paper roll bucket inside the printer, remove it before inserting a new paper roll. You can throw the core in the trash can.

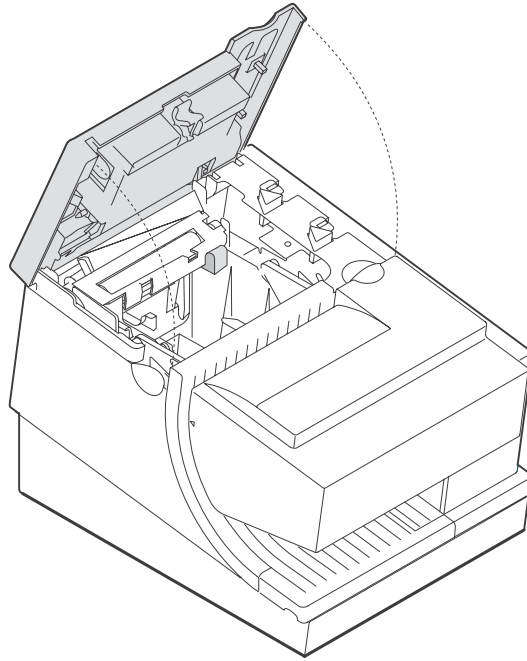


Figure 26. Paper Cover (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)

Note: Refer to the label on the inside of the paper cover for a diagram of how to load paper.

3. See Figure 27 on page 54 and place the paper roll into the paper roll bucket as shown. The leading edge of the paper should come from the direction of the front of the printer and go across the top of the roll as shown in the diagram. If it feeds from the bottom of the roll, nothing will be printed on the paper.

Note: The thermal printhead will not print on paper with glue on it. If the new paper roll was sealed by glue, tear off the 6 to 8 inches of paper with glue on it before loading it. Or, you can advance the paper after loading to get rid of the glued paper.

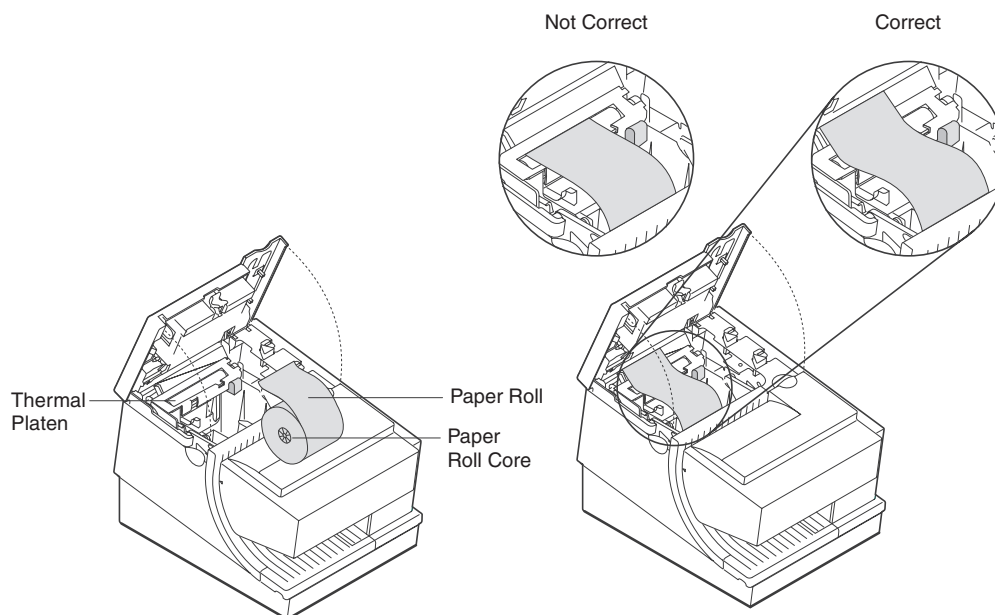


Figure 27. Paper Loading Path (Models T11, T12, T13, T14, T18, TG3, and TG4)

4. See Figure 27. Place the leading edge of the paper over the metal guide.
5. Close the paper cover.
6. Press the customer receipt feed button to advance the paper to verify that the paper is feeding correctly. Feed 30 cm (about 1 ft) of paper through to test for correct alignment.

Attention: Do not pull the receipt paper out of the printer with the paper access cover closed. This disengages the paper feed. The paper feed motor must then catch up before the printer can feed the paper, which causes missing lines or partial lines of print. Use the customer receipt feed button to advance the receipt and all lines will print.

Clearing jams in the check flipper area

This procedure is for the SureMark Model T12 and T14 printers (MICR Reader and Check Flipper features) only.

If a check jams in the Check Flipper mechanism:

1. Lift up the left front corner of the lower document insert cover and pull the cover from the printer. (See Figure 28.)
2. The action you take in this step depends on whether the document is visible and can be removed:
 - If you can remove the document:
 - a. Remove the document.
 - b. Replace the lower document insert cover.
 - c. You are finished with this procedure.
 - If you cannot remove the document, continue with Step 3.

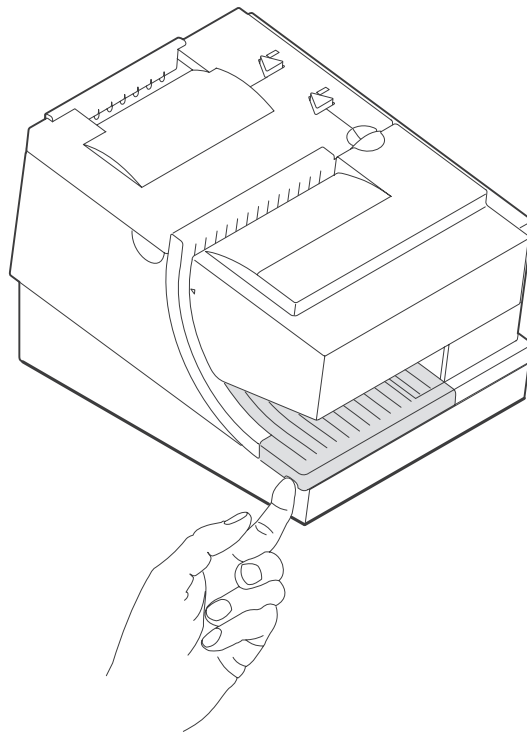


Figure 28. Removing the Lower Document Insert (DI) Cover

3. Lift up the tab on the left side of the check flipper cartridge and remove the assembly from the printer. (See Figure 29 on page 56.)

Note: For printers with a powered flipper (Model T18) the cartridge is attached to the printer with an electrical cable and cannot be removed. Simply raise the front edge of the cartridge to remove a jammed document underneath.

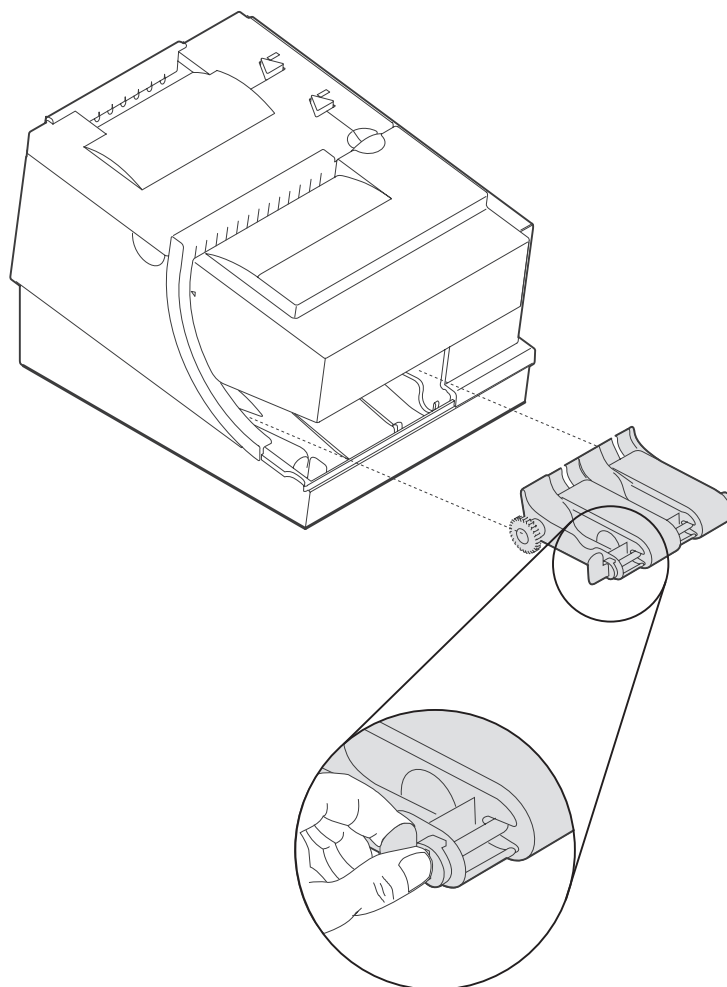


Figure 29. Removing the Check Flipper Cartridge (except Model T18)

4. Reach inside the document insert station and carefully remove the jammed check.
5. Reinstall the check flipper cartridge and the lower DI cover.

MICR read head cleaning

The MICR read head should be cleaned after 10 000 checks are processed or every 3 months. Insert the MICR reader cleaning card through the document insert station several times. (See Appendix A, “Consumable supplies” to order cleaning cards.)

If cleaning the MICR read head does not solve a problem you are having, it might be that you are experiencing electromagnetic noise interference. Sources of electromagnetic noise (for example, displays, security towers, and other sources) can interfere with the MICR read head. The printer is equipped to filter noise from many devices. If the MICR reader does not function properly, rearranging the printer relative to the noise source may improve MICR reading. The noise source should be as far away as possible from the right side of the printer.

For additional information on troubleshooting MICR read problems, see “Offline tests” on page 62.

Thermal printhead cleaning

The thermal printhead can be cleaned whenever print quality deteriorates.

1. Open the paper cover.
2. Using a cotton swab soaked in isopropyl alcohol, gently wipe the printhead several times on its print line and on the surrounding area. See Figure 30.
3. Wipe off any residual alcohol with a dry swab.

If print quality does not improve after cleaning the thermal printhead, call for service.

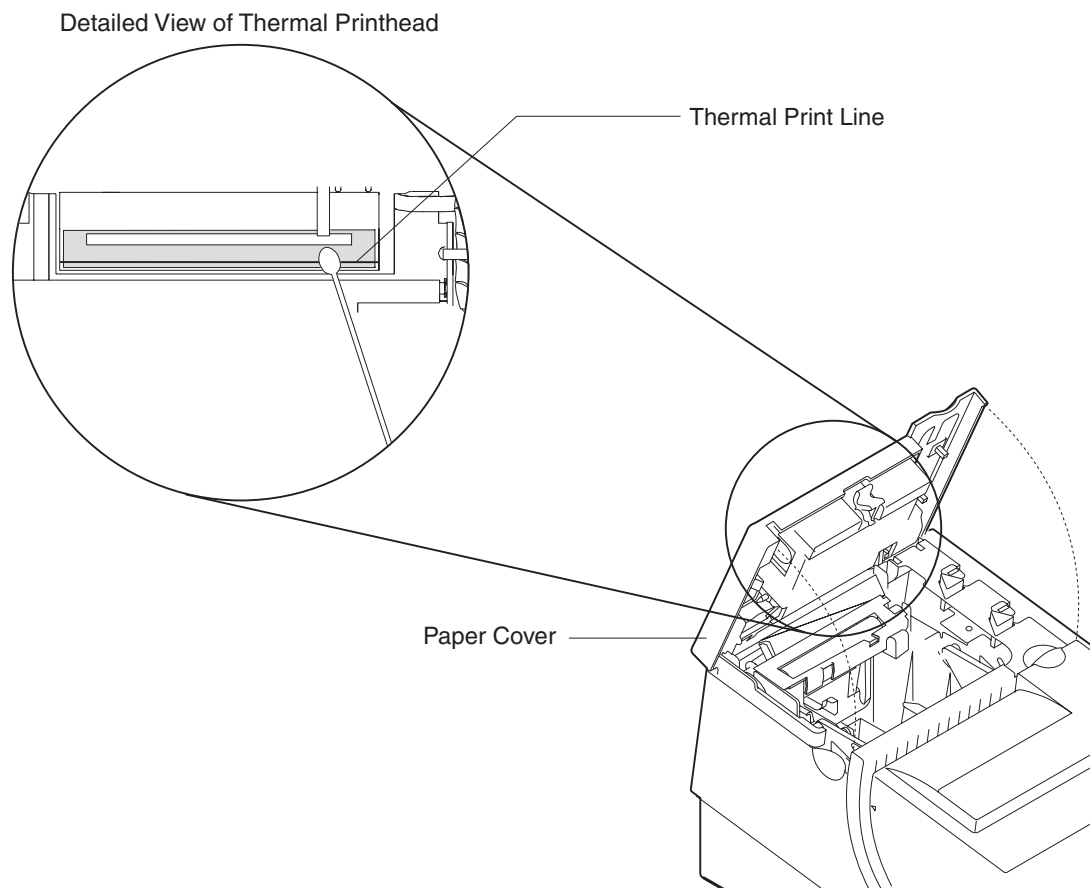


Figure 30. Printhead and Print Line Area (Models T11, T12, T13, T14, T18, TG3, and TG4)

Document scanner cleaning (Model T18)

The scanner surface should be cleaned after 10 000 documents, or every three months, or whenever image quality deteriorates.

1. Open the ribbon cover. See Figure 31 on page 59.
2. Move the impact printhead to its rightmost position, as shown.
3. Rotate the scanner registration plate 180 degrees up to expose the glass scanner surface. See Figure 31 on page 59.
4. Use a cotton swab that is *lightly* soaked with alcohol to wipe any residue from the scanner glass surface.
5. Gently return the scanner registration plate to its original position.

6. The scanner should be recalibrated after it has been cleaned. See "Document scanner calibration (Model TI8)."

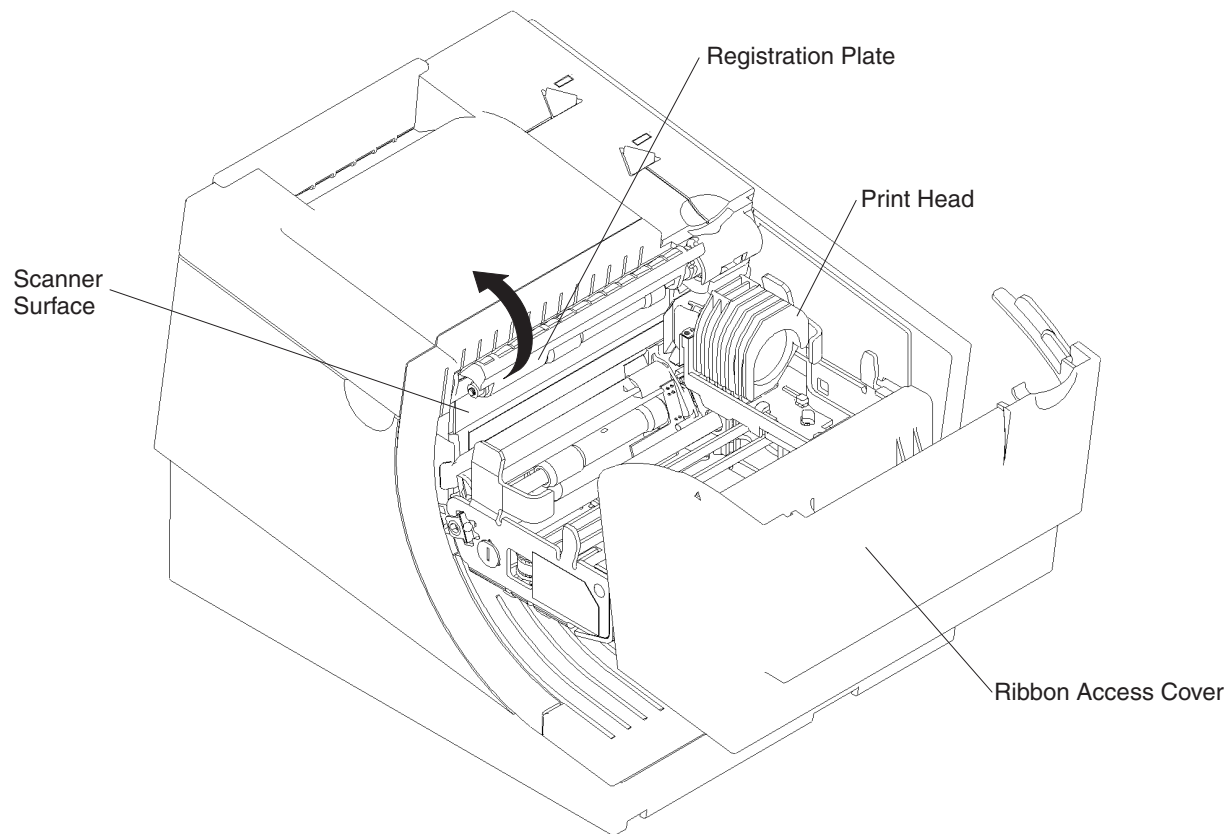


Figure 31. Scanner and print head location, Model TI8

Document scanner calibration (Model TI8)

The printer must have power ON. Use a clean sheet of white copier paper (not recycled paper) as the calibration target. Fold the paper in half. (Optional: cut paper to 4.25 " wide.)

1. Always begin by making sure the scanner window is clean.
2. Put paper in the CR station (paper will be used for printing in later step).
3. Insert the target paper into the document insert station as you would insert a check. The folded edge should be up (or inserted first) and the right edge should be against the right side of the paper path. Press the DI button to automatically advance the paper to the ready position.
4. Enter offline mode by doing the following:
 - a. Open the CR cover and the DI cover.
 - b. Press and hold both buttons until the LED flashes rapidly.
 - c. Close the DI cover.
 - d. Close the CR cover.
5. Follow the directions that are printed in the CR station to perform the calibration.
6. Remove the target paper when complete.
7. Power the printer OFF and then ON for the changes to take effect.

Chapter 5. Testing and problem analysis (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)



DANGER

To avoid a shock hazard, do not connect or disconnect any cables or perform installation, maintenance, or reconfiguration of this product during an electrical storm.



DANGER

To avoid shock hazard:

- The power cord must be connected to a properly wired and earthed receptacle.
- Any equipment to which this product will be attached must also be connected to properly wired receptacles.

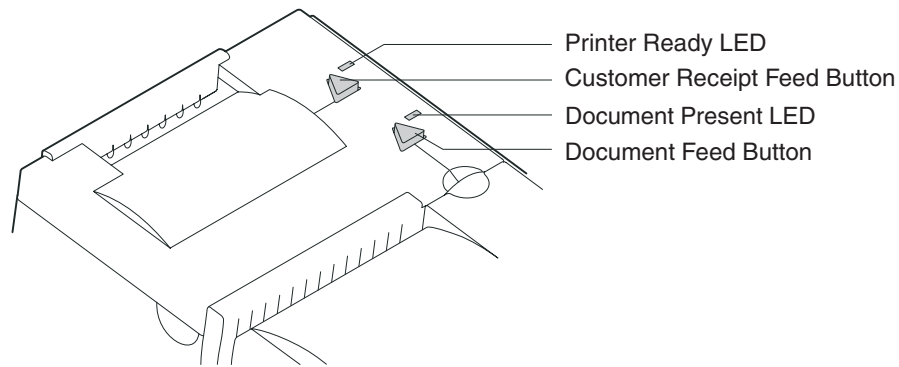
Note: For translations of these safety notices, see *IBM Safety Information — Read This First*, GA27-4004.

Testing the printer

When you power ON the SureMark printer, it runs a power-on self-test (POST). If the POST finds no errors, the printer is ready for operation. Follow this procedure to determine if there are errors.

Note: Never connect or disconnect the printer when power is applied (when LEDs are ON).

1. If the printer is powered ON, power **OFF** the printer and power it **ON** again.
 - If the printer is attached to the system with the RS-232 cable or the standard USB cable with a power brick, disconnect the power cord, then reconnect the power cord to a properly wired and grounded power source.
 - If the printer is attached to the system with the RS-485 cable, power **OFF** the POS system, and then power **ON** the system, which also powers ON the printer.
 - If the printer is attached to the system with a powered USB cable, the USB attached printer can be hot-plugged.



2. Check the status of the Printer Ready indicator:

Printer ready indicator ON:

The power-on self-test completed successfully.

Printer ready indicator OFF or blinking:

The POST failed.

3. If the POST fails or if you suspect problems with your system, see "Problem determination" on page 66.
4. See "Offline tests" and run the offline tests. If the offline tests fail or you suspect problems with your system, see "Problem determination" on page 66.

Offline tests

The following offline tests are used as diagnostic tools to ensure the printer is operating correctly.

Customer receipt test

1. Press and hold both buttons to enter offline mode. When the printer ready indicator begins blinking, release both buttons.
2. Press and release the customer receipt feed button to start this test.
3. See Figure 32 on page 63 and verify that your printer has printed correct information for your model and configuration:
 - MICR reader enabled and check flipper enabled (Model TI2, TI4, TI8, or TG4)
 - Double-byte character sets enabled (Model TI5 and TG5)
 - RS-232 or RS-485 serial interface or USB interface
 - 2M card with user flash storage enabled (Model TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)
 - 2M card in single-byte mode (Model TI5 and TG5)
 - Applicable parameters for RS-232 communications:
 - 9600 or 19 200 baud rate
 - DTR/DSR or XON/XOFF control
 - A solid line should appear as the last line of the test pattern.

If any characters that appear in Figure 32 on page 63 are missing from the test pattern that you print, or if the solid line is missing, go to "Problem determination" on page 66.

Document insert test

1. Insert a document in the document insert station. The document present indicator should come on.
If the document present indicator does not come on, realign the document.

If pressing the document feed button does not feed the document, go to “Problem determination” on page 66.

2. Press and hold both buttons to enter offline mode. When the printer ready indicator begins blinking, release both buttons.
3. Press and release the document feed button to print the test pattern. The test pattern includes all printable characters in the resident code page, printed in the default font.
4. See Figure 32 and verify that your printer has printed correct information for your model and configuration:
 - Model type (MICR reader enabled, check flipper enabled for Model TI2, TI4, TI8, or TG4).
 - Communication options (RS-232, RS-485, or USB).
 - RS-232 parameters, if applicable.
 - A solid line should appear as the last line of the test pattern.

If any characters that appear in Figure 32 are missing from the test pattern that you print, or if the solid line is missing, go to “Problem determination” on page 66.

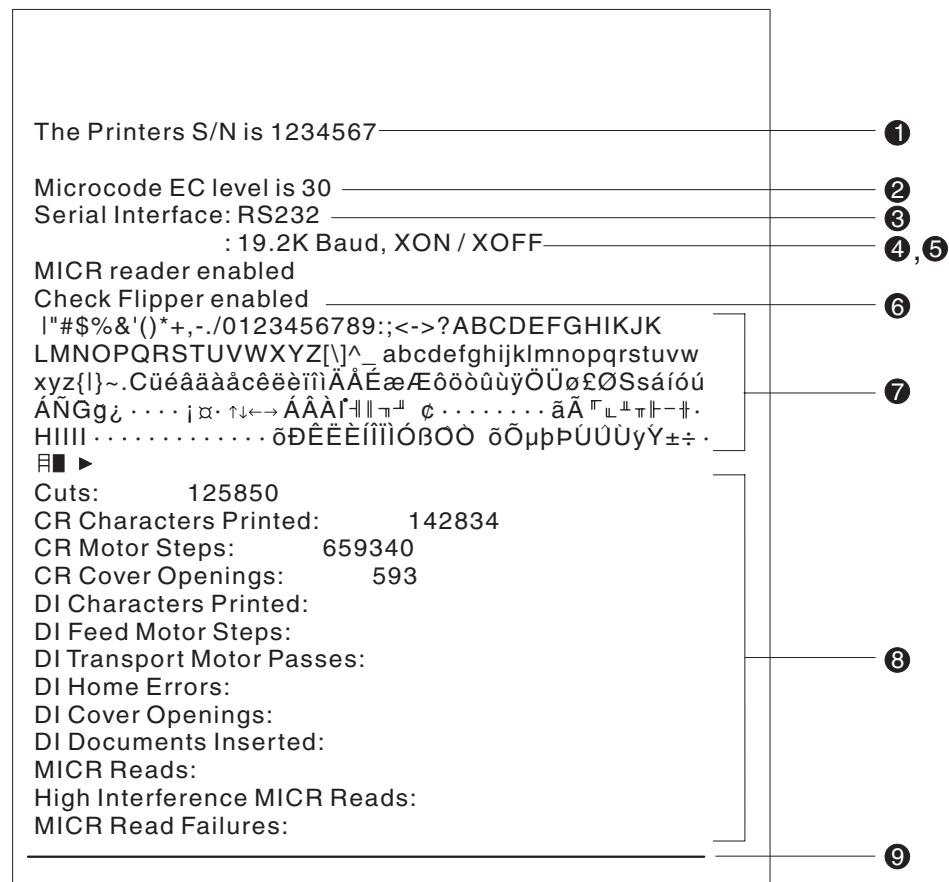


Figure 32. Offline Printer Test Pattern – Customer Receipt Station (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4)

Test Pattern Notes:

1. The serial number that prints will be the actual serial number of your printer.
2. The microcode level will be the actual level of your printer's microcode.

3. The serial interface will be specified as **RS232**, **RS485**, or **USB**, depending on which interface is used to attach the printer to the system unit.
4. The line speed information appears only when the RS-232 interface is used. The value can be either **9.6 K Baud** or **19.2 K Baud**, depending on the RS-232 switch settings. (See “RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except TI8” on page 29.)
5. The RS-232 control mode information appears only when the RS-232 interface is used. The value can be either **DTR/DSR** or **XON/XOFF**, depending on the RS-232 switch settings. (See “RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except TI8” on page 29 or, for Model TI8, see “RS-232 communication mode selections — Model TI8” on page 32).
6. The feature enabled lines will appear only when the feature is installed.
7. These lines break at different points for the test pattern printed in the document insert (DI) station.
8. This section contains printer usage statistics that you can use for problem determination.
9. The line across the bottom should be solid with no blank spaces.

MICR reader and check flipper test (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)

Attention: Failure to perform these steps in the sequence shown will cause the entire electronic journal to print on the CR station. Printing the electronic journal erases the information from flash storage.

1. Insert the check face down with the magnetic ink characters to the right.
2. Press and hold both buttons to enter offline mode. When the printer ready indicator begins blinking, release both buttons.
3. Press and release both buttons again.
4. The printer will then perform a self-test of the MICR/flipper function.
5. Remove the check.

Characters that match the magnetic ink characters are printed on the customer receipt and the check is flipped over. Characters that cannot be read will be replaced with question marks and will be printed at the customer receipt station. If the characters are not read properly or the check does not flip, go to “Problem determination” on page 66.

If the Model TI2, TI4, TI8, or TG4 detects noise, it prints a message on the customer receipt below the magnetic characters from the check (Figure 33 on page 65 and Figure 35 on page 65 are examples - actual numbers may vary). The message shows noise characteristics. You can use the noise level to position your printer to minimize outside interference with the MICR reader. An acceptable noise level is less than 5 percent, if possible.

Sources of electromagnetic noise (for example, displays, security towers, and other sources) can interfere with the MICR reader read head. If the printer shows an external noise source, rearrange the printer to make the noise source as far away as possible from the right side of the printer. This may eliminate the external noise.

T123456780T 0860861190A 0671

The average MICR signal is 99% of nominal.

Figure 33. MICR Reader Test Results, Models TI2, TI4, and TG4 – Good Noise Level

Magnetic: T1234567890T 0860861190A 0671
Optical 1: T1234567890T 0860861190A 0671
Optical 2: T1234567890T 0860861190A 0671

Composite result:
T1234567890T 0860861190A 0671

The average MICR signal is 99% of normal

Figure 34. MICR Reader Test Results, Model TI8 – Good Noise Level

T123456780T 0860861190A 0671

The average MICR signal is 112% of nominal.

There is an external noise source with an amplitude of 23% (580 mV) of a maximum MICR signal and a period of 14 milliseconds.

This noise may affect the printer's ability to read the MICR signal on checks. Move the printer away from the noise source. This source may be a display or a security tower.

Figure 35. MICR Reader Test Results – Noise Level Needs Adjusting

Scanned check printout, Model TI8

Following the description of the test, Model TI8 also prints a copy of the check that has been scanned. This printout is in black and white, not grayscale.

RS-232 hex dump

To enable hex dump mode for the printer, press and hold the both buttons while the printer is powered on. To exit, power OFF or reset the printer.

Resetting the printer - offline

1. Press and hold both buttons (Customer Receipt Feed button and Document Feed button) to enter offline mode. Release both buttons when the Printer Ready indicator begins to blink.
2. Open the customer receipt cover, then close it. The printer resets.

Electronic journal dump

Note: Electronic journal data must be formatted and stored as printed lines for the journal data to be printed in readable format.

1. Press and hold both the Customer Receipt Feed button and the Document Feed button to enter offline mode.
2. Release both buttons when the Printer Ready indicator begins to blink.
3. Press and release both buttons.

Problem determination

Any problems that arise with a SureMark printer are either software errors or hardware failures. This section contains information to help you determine the cause of a problem and how to solve it.

If the SureMark printer fails, use Table 3 to identify and report the problem. Follow the procedures described in the table. If you cannot identify and solve the problem, call your service representative.

Table 3. Troubleshooting – Models T11, T12, T13, T14, T18, TG3, and TG4

If the problem is...	Here's what to do...
Printer ready indicator is OFF.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If connected to a system using the RS-485 communication port, check that the system is powered ON and cable 7 is connected. • If using the RS-232 communication port or a USB port with a power brick, check that the brick power supply is connected to the printer and plugged into an ac power source. • If using USB communication with a powered USB cable, check that the system is powered ON.
Printer ready indicator is blinking.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the customer receipt station has paper loaded correctly. Close the cover and push the Customer Receipt Feed button to feed a small amount of paper. • Check the document insert station printhead and paper path for any obstructions. • Check that the paper and ribbon covers are closed.
Checks not flipping	Go to "Clearing jams in the check flipper area" on page 55.
Checks not reading	Go to "MICR read head cleaning" on page 57 or "Document scanner cleaning (Model T18)" on page 58 or "Document scanner calibration (Model T18)" on page 59.
Customer receipt station is feeding paper, but is not printing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the paper roll is not upside down. Go to "Paper loading" on page 53. • Clean the printhead. See "Thermal printhead cleaning" on page 58.

Table 3. Troubleshooting – Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 (continued)

If the problem is...	Here's what to do...
Document insert station is not printing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the paper path. • Check to see if the ribbon is installed correctly. • Change the ribbon, go to "Ribbon loading" on page 51.
Scanned images streaked, too light, or too dark	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the scanner window. Go to "Document scanner cleaning (Model TI8)" on page 58. • Calibrate the scanner. Go to "Document scanner calibration (Model TI8)" on page 59 • Clean or replace the registration plate.

Notes:

1. Record all symptoms before calling for service.
2. If you receive software error messages, refer to the application program's software manual.
3. Call your service representative.

Part 3. Models TF6 and TM6

This part contains operational, testing, and problem determination information for SureMark Printer models TF6 and TM6, which are the single-station printers that support DBCS.

Chapter 6. Operation (Models TF6 and TM6)

Operating controls and indicators	71
Paper loading	71
Thermal printhead cleaning	73

Note: All covers **must** be installed on the SureMark printer during operation.

Operating controls and indicators

There is one triangular-shaped button and one light-emitting diode (LED) indicator located on top of the printer.

When the LED indicator is on continuously, the printer is powered on and ready for printing. When the indicator blinks, one of the following conditions exists:

- The printer is offline (offline testing is enabled).
- The printer is out of paper.
- The cover is open.
- The cutter is jammed.

See "Offline test" on page 76 for additional button functions.

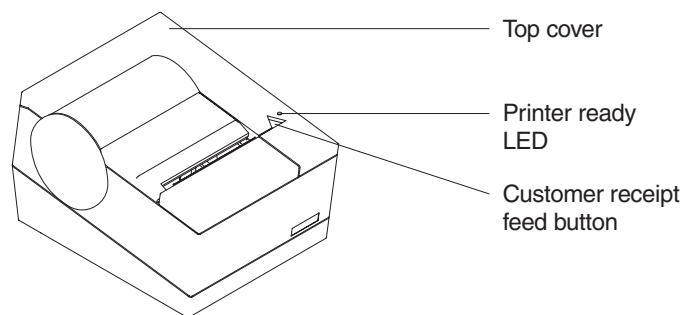


Figure 36. SureMark Printer - Indicator, Control, and Printing Station (Models TF6 and TM6)

Paper loading

1. Open the paper cover.
2. If there is any unused paper or if there is an empty paper roll core in the paper roll holder inside the printer, remove it before inserting a new paper roll. You can throw the core in the trash can.
3. If the printer is configured for "snap in" paper loading (two white spheres are present behind the metal springs) then place the paper roll onto the paper roll holder as shown in Figure 37 on page 72 otherwise, merely drop the roll into the bucket. The leading edge of the paper should come from the direction of the back of the printer and go across the bottom of the roll as shown in the diagram.

Note: The thermal printhead will not print on paper with glue on it. If the new paper roll was sealed by glue, tear off the 15 to 20 cm (6 to 8 in.) of paper with glue on it before loading it. Or, you can advance the paper after loading to get rid of the glued paper.

4. Pull the end of the paper up over the paper roll and toward the back of the printer.

Note: Refer to the label on the inside of the bottom cover for a diagram of how to load paper.

5. Close the paper cover.
6. Press the customer receipt feed button to advance the paper and verify that the paper is feeding correctly. Feed 30 cm (about 1 ft) of paper through to test for correct alignment.

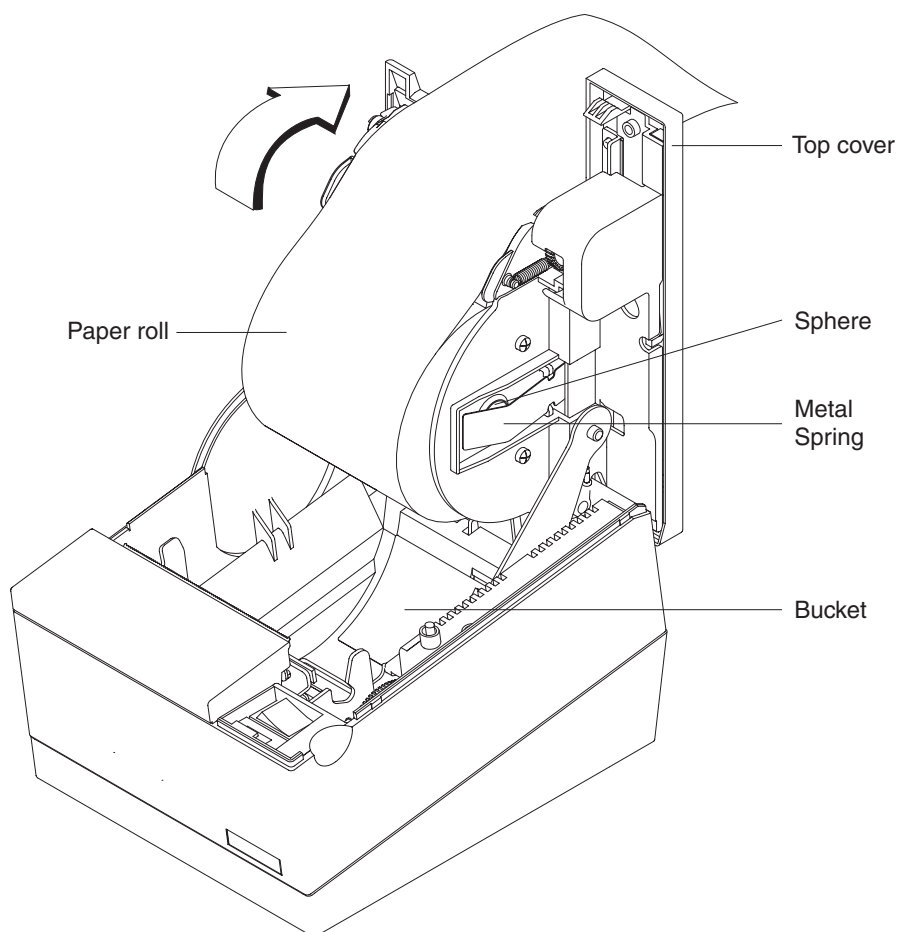


Figure 37. Paper Loading Path (Models TF6 and TM6)

Attention: Do not pull the receipt paper out of the printer with the paper access cover closed. This might cause partial lines of print. Use the customer receipt feed button to advance the receipt.

Thermal printhead cleaning

The thermal printhead can be cleaned whenever print quality deteriorates.

1. Open the paper cover.
2. Using a cotton swab soaked in isopropyl alcohol, gently wipe the printhead several times on its print line and on the surrounding area. See Figure 38.
3. Wipe off any residual alcohol with a dry swab.

If print quality does not improve after cleaning the thermal printhead, call for service.

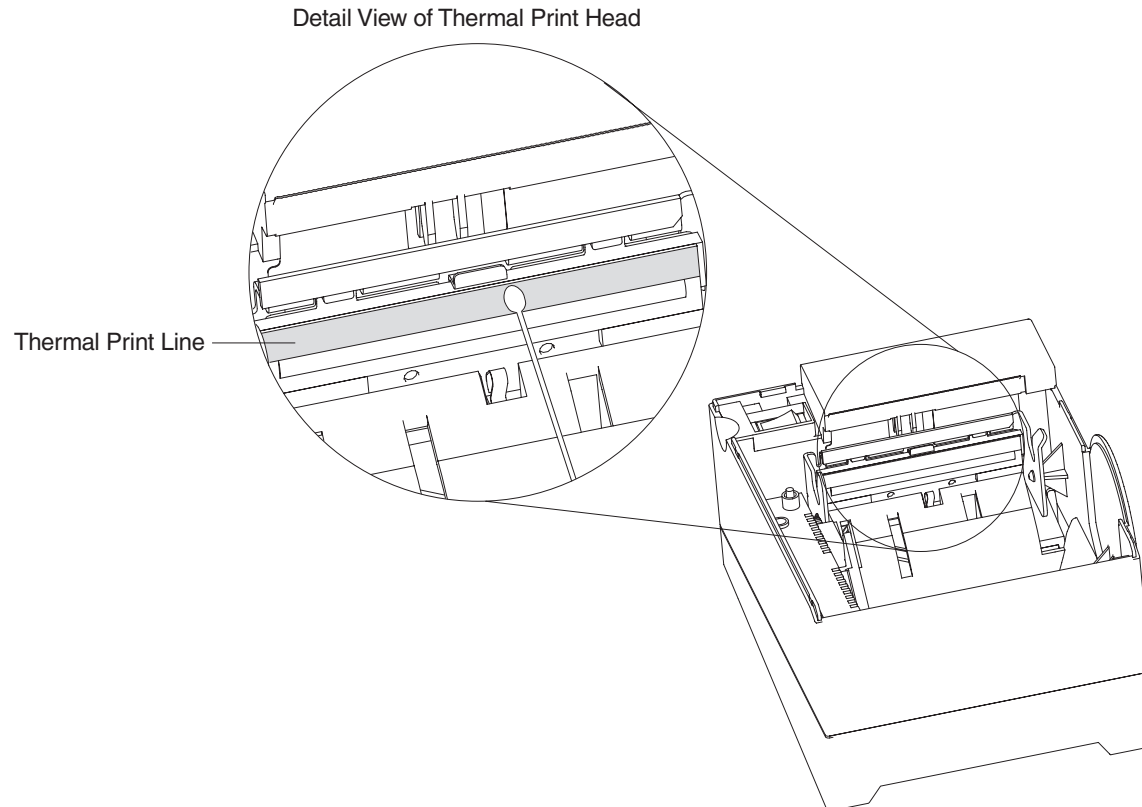


Figure 38. Printhead and Print Line Area (Models TF6 and TM6)

Chapter 7. Testing and problem analysis (Models TF6 and TM6)



DANGER

To avoid a shock hazard, do not connect or disconnect any cables or perform installation, maintenance, or reconfiguration of this product during an electrical storm.



DANGER

To avoid shock hazard:

- The power cord must be connected to a properly wired and earthed receptacle.
- Any equipment to which this product will be attached must also be connected to properly wired receptacles.

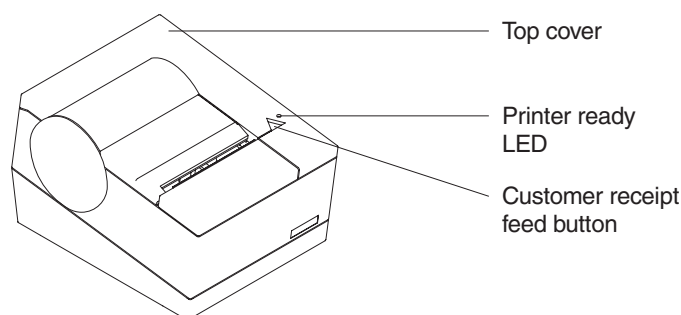
Note: For translations of these safety notices, see *IBM Safety Information — Read This First*, GA27-4004.

Testing the printer

When you power on the SureMark printer, it runs a power-on self-test (POST). If the POST finds no errors, the printer is ready for operation. Follow this procedure to determine if there are errors.

Note: Never connect or disconnect the printer when power is applied (when the LED is on).

1. If the printer is powered on, power OFF the printer and power it on again.
 - If the printer is attached to the system with the RS-232 cable or the standard USB cable with a power brick, disconnect the power cord, then reconnect the power cord to a properly wired and grounded power source.
 - If the printer is attached to the system with the RS-485 cable, power OFF the POS system, and then power on the system, which also powers on the printer.
 - If the printer is attached to the system with a powered USB cable, the USB attached printer can be hot-plugged.
 - For single-station printers, use the printer's power on/off switch that is located under the top cover. Power OFF the printer, then power ON the printer



2. Check the status of the Printer Ready indicator:

Printer Ready indicator ON:

The power-on self test completed successfully.

Printer Ready indicator OFF or blinking:

The POST failed.

3. If the POST fails or if you suspect problems with your system, see "Problem determination" on page 78.
4. See "Offline test" and run the offline test. If the offline test fails or you suspect problems with your system, see "Problem determination" on page 78.

Offline test

An offline printing test is provided as a diagnostic tool to ensure the printer is operating correctly.

1. Open the top cover.
2. Press and hold the paper feed button for 5 seconds. The LED indicator will make one quick flash followed by a pause. The beeper will make a short single tone periodically.
3. Release the paper feed button.
4. Close the top cover.
5. See Figure 39 on page 77 and verify that your printer has printed correct information for your model and configuration:
 - 2-MB card with user flash storage enabled
 - RS-232, RS-485 or USB serial interface
 - Applicable parameters for RS-232 communications:
 - 9600 or 19 200 baud rate
 - DTR/DSR or XON/XOFF control
 - A solid line should appear as the last line of the test pattern.

If any characters that appear in Figure 39 on page 77 are missing from the test pattern you print, or if the solid line is missing, go to Table 4 on page 78.

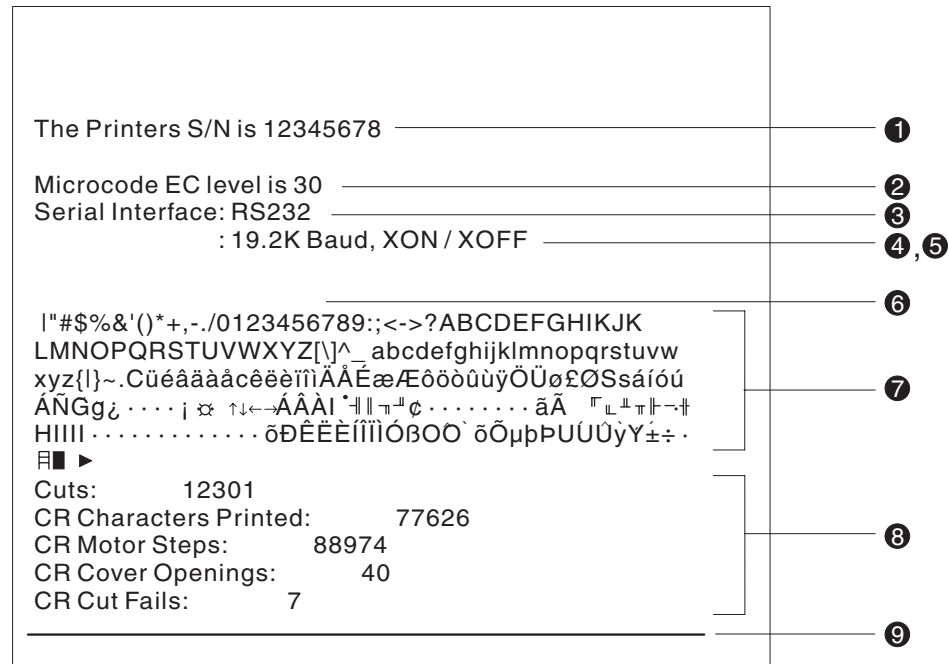


Figure 39. Offline Printer Test Pattern – Models TF6 and TM6

Test Pattern Notes:

1. The serial number that prints will be the actual serial number of your printer. (If the logic card has been replaced, this number must be reset to the original serial number.)
2. The microcode level will be the actual level of your printer's microcode.
3. The serial interface will be specified as **RS232**, **RS485**, or **USB**, depending on which interface is used to attach the printer to the system unit.
4. The line speed information appears only when the RS-232 interface is used. The value can be either **9.6K baud** or **19.2K baud**, depending on the RS-232 switch settings. (See "RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except TI8" on page 29.)
5. The RS-232 control mode information appears only when the RS-232 interface is used. The value can be either **DTR/DSR** or **XON/XOFF**, depending on the RS-232 switch settings. (See "RS-232 communication mode selections — all models except TI8" on page 29.)
6. The feature-enabled lines will appear only when a feature is installed.
7. This section contains the test pattern.
8. This section contains printer usage statistics that you can use for problem determination.
9. The line across the bottom should be solid with no blank spaces.

RS-232 hex dump

An RS-232 hex dump is provided to help diagnose problems with Models TM6 and TF6.

To enable hex dump mode for the Model TF6 or TM6 printer, press and hold the paper feed button while the printer is powered on. To exit, power OFF or reset the printer.

Resetting the printer - offline

To reset the printer:

1. Open the top cover.
2. Power off the printer using the power on/off switch that is located in the right front corner of the printer.
3. Power on the printer.

Problem determination

Any problems that arise with a SureMark printer are either software errors or hardware failures. This section contains information to help you determine the cause of a problem and how to solve it.

If the SureMark printer fails, use Table 4 to identify and report the problem. Follow the procedures described in the table. If you cannot identify and solve the problem, call your service representative.

Table 4. Troubleshooting – Models TF6 and TM6

If the problem is...	Here's what to do...
Printer ready indicator is OFF.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the printer power switch, which is located under the top cover, is set ON. • If connected to a system using the RS-485 communication port, check that the system is powered on and cable 7 is connected. • If using the RS-232 communication port or a USB port with a power brick, check that the brick power supply is connected to the printer and plugged into an ac power source. • If using USB communication with a powered USB cable, check that the system is powered ON.
Printer ready indicator is blinking.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the customer receipt station has paper loaded correctly. Close the cover and push the Customer Receipt Feed button to feed a small amount of paper. • Check that the cover is closed.
Customer receipt station is feeding paper, but is not printing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure that the paper roll is in correctly. Go to "Paper loading" on page 53. • Clean the printhead. See "Thermal printhead cleaning" on page 58.

Notes:

1. Record all symptoms before calling for service.
2. If you receive software error messages, refer to the application program's software manual.
3. Call your service representative.

Appendix A. Consumable supplies

Paper specifications	79
Thermal paper	79
Document insert forms (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)	80
Single and multipart form specifications	80
Specifications for documents that can be flipped	80
Print ribbons (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)	80
MICR reader read head cleaning cards (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)	81

Paper specifications

Attention: Using an inferior grade of paper can affect print quality and the life of printheads and the printer mechanism. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for information about OEM paper certifications for the SureMark.

When selecting a paper, ensure that the paper’s archive life meets the requirements of the tax authorities of your country for archiving tax-related data.

Thermal paper

The paper used in the thermal receipt station must meet the following requirements:

Width 79.5 ± 0.5 mm (3.13 ± 0.02 in.)

Outside Diameter

80 mm (3.15 in.) maximum for thermal/impact SureMark printers

90 mm (3.54 in.) maximum for single-station SureMark printers

Thickness

0.0498 ± 0.0078 mm (0.00196 ± 0.00031 in.)

Weight

50 ± 9 g/m² (13.5 ± 2.5 lb)

The paper must be wound with the printing side facing out and with the outer edge glued to prevent unraveling. The paper should not be attached to the core in any manner. There should be 1.5 to 2.1 m (5 to 7 ft.) of red stripe at the end of the roll.

Note: Non-topcoated thermal paper can be recycled along with other paper products. They can also be incinerated and sent to landfills with no more effect on the environment than regular office paper waste.

Important

Printer reliability and performance are directly related to the quality of the supplies used by the customer. The published parameters for printer performance are established using supplies that meet the specifications listed above.

Thermal paper with post-processing, such as (but not limited to) watermarks, coupons, or advertisements printed on the front or back of the paper, is not covered by IBM’s specifications. Some inks and printing processes will work acceptably, while others will not. Printer problems that are caused by supplies that do not meet IBM’s specifications may result in a billable service call, regardless of the existence of a service contract.

Document insert forms (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)

The printers will accommodate single and multipart forms.

Single and multipart form specifications

Specification	Value
Minimum width:	50 mm (2 in.)
Maximum thickness of multipart forms:	0.47 mm (0.0185 in.)
Maximum thickness of front sheet, multipart forms:	0.08 mm (0.003 in.)
Minimum thickness of single-part form:	0.10 mm (0.004 in.)
Maximum thickness of single-part form:	0.2 mm (0.008 in.)
Weight range for single-part forms:	68 – 90 g/m ² (18 – 24 #)
For best reliability, paper grain should be in the direction that the paper is fed into the printer.	

Notes:

1. Test all forms in the printer to ensure acceptable performance prior to buying a significant quantity. There should be no binding holes or other holes within 10mm (0.4 in.) from the right edge of the form.
2. Forms less than 0.15mm (0.006 in.) thick with the grain of the paper perpendicular to the feed direction (short-grain paper) should not be used for landscape printing.

Specifications for documents that can be flipped

Multipart forms and short-grain single-part forms are not supported.

Specification	Value
Minimum form length:	80 mm (3.14 in.)
Maximum form length:	223 mm (8.78 in.)
Maximum form width:	102 mm (4 in.)
Paper weight:	75 – 95 g/m ²

Print ribbons (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)

The ribbon is an *Epson ERC-35* or equivalent. In addition to the *Epson ERC-35*, the Infotech RE35P ribbon was tested and approved for use in the SureMark printer.

The Infotech ribbon, order number RE35P, Black, is available from:

Infotech, Inc.
2215 29th Street SE #B-1
Grand Rapids, MI 49508

Phone: (616) 452-5444
Fax (616) 452-5499

Attention: Using an inferior grade of ribbon can affect print quality and the life of printheads and the printer mechanism.

MICR reader read head cleaning cards (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)

A package of 10 cards for cleaning the MICR reader's read head is available from IBM as part number 73G2600. The MICR reader's read head should be cleaned every 10 000 checks or every 3 months.

Appendix B. Technical information

General description	83
Specifications	83
Memory units	85
Immediate commands	85
Voltage conversion circuitry	85
RS-485 serial I/O parameters	86
Cash drawer connector pin assignments	86
RS-232 connector pin assignments	86
RS-232 parameters	87
USB connector pin assignments	87
Code page definitions	88
Generic code page	89
Code page 437.	90
Code page 858.	91
Code page 860.	92
Code page 863.	93
Code page 865.	94
Character fonts	94
Thermal printing font.	94
Impact printing fonts (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)	95

General description

All SureMark printers print the customer receipt using the thermal printhead. For SureMark printers that include a document insert station, documents are printed using the impact head. No SureMark printer contains a journal print station.

Thermal printing occurs by placing a heating element against a thermally sensitive paper. By energizing the elements, dots are formed. Thermal printers print dot rows horizontally across the page – 576 dots make up a single dot row across the paper. Printing continues row by row until the entire character is formed.

Impact printing utilizes a standard ballistic printhead. Each wire is fired against an inked ribbon which places a dot on the paper.

SureMark printers contain all the circuitry, processing hardware, and software for operating a thermal and, except for Models TF6 and TM6, an impact printer mechanism. SureMark printers do not contain a power supply. However, they do contain voltage conversion circuitry to allow connection to a standard IBM system interface or to an RS-232 24-volt power supply. (See “Power requirements” on page 12 for specific power supply specifications.)

Specifications

The information in the Document Insert Station column of Table 5 on page 84 applies only to SureMark Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4. There is no document insert station on models TF6 and TM6.

Table 5. Station characteristics

Characteristic	Customer Receipt Station	Document Insert Station
Speed (see note following table)	TI1/TI2 – 19.6 lps at 6 lpi, 26 lps at 8 lpi; TI3/TI4/TI8/TG3/TG4 – 39.2 lps at 6 lpi, 52 lps at 8 lpi; TF6/TM6 – 39.2 lps at 6 lpi, 52 lps at 8 lpi	4.3 lps
Paper Width	All models – 80 mm (3.54 in.)	
Print Width	For all SureMark printers: 34 characters at 12 cpi, 44 characters at 15 cpi, 48 characters at 17 cpi For all models except TI1 and TI2: 57 characters at 20 cpi	37 characters at 12 cpi, 47 characters at 15 cpi, 52 characters at 17 cpi.
Pitch	For all SureMark printers: 12, 15, 17 cpi For all models except TI1 and TI2: 20 cpi	12, 15, 17 cpi

Note: In order to conserve power, SureMark Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6 reduce their throughput when printing high print densities, such as logo messages or full black lines. Because these types of print messages are used on a limited basis, the overall performance when printing a customer receipt is not noticeably affected.

The reduced print speed is based on the number of print dots that are turned on for a given print line, which is defined as dot utilization. Dot utilization is typically low for normal character printing and up to 100% for full black line printing. The SureMark printer operates at 52 lps at low dot utilization, and at slower speeds as the dot utilization increases.

Table 6. Sound characteristics

Type	Description	LwAd		LpAm		<LpA>m	
		Operating (bels)	Idling (bels)	Operating (dB)	Idling (dB)	Operating (dB)	Idling (dB)
SureMark TI1	Printer	5.7	N/A	61.5	N/A	47	N/A

Notes:

LwAd The declared upper limit of the sound power level for a random sample of machines.

LpAm The mean value of the A-weighted sound pressure levels at the operator position (if any) for a random sample of machines.

<LpA>m

The mean value of the A-weighted sound pressure levels at the one-meter (bystander) positions for a random sample of machines.

N/A Indicates *not applicable*.

All measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

Memory units

Random access memory (RAM) is used for storing the image data for the thermal printhead and program code. It is also used for storing incoming data from the communication port.

Flash memory is used for many purposes, including:

- Character set storage (80 KB)
- Personalized message storage (8 KB)
- Logo or APA message storage (64 KB)
- Flash memory data storage (104 KB on standard printers, 1.9 MB on printers with the 2-MB memory option, 8 MB on printers with the 8-MB memory option)
- Program code and resident character sets (256 KB) (except Model TI8)
- For Model TI8, 1.25 MB is available for all uses plus scanned images.

Personalized messages are those messages that are printed on each receipt in a POS environment. Storing these messages in the flash memory greatly reduces the data transmission time to the printer and the processing time of that data by the microprocessor. This is also true of graphics or APA messages, which require a significant amount of transmission and processing time.

Flash memory can also be used as a storage place for customer data. This data could be journal data.

Immediate commands

The SureMark printer has 4 KB of memory on Models TI1 and TI2, and 16 KB of memory on Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6 to store incoming commands and data.

Most commands are received and then executed sequentially. However, several commands execute immediately upon receipt. These commands are:

- “Download graphics (logo) Commands” on page 112
- “Predefine messages” on page 114
- “Download user-defined characters” on page 116
- “Extended address command—request printer ID” on page 109
- “Real-time requests” on page 161.

Voltage conversion circuitry

The printer requires two voltages. The printheads and motors use +24 V dc. Powering the logic circuitry requires +5 V dc. Printer input voltage is one of the following:

Communication Mode	Power Requirement
RS-485	+38 V dc and +5 V dc
RS-232	+24 V dc
USB	+24 V dc

In each case, a single dc-to-dc converter converts voltage to +24 V dc and +5 V dc. An autoswitch circuit on the interface card senses the operating mode (RS-485, RS-232, powered USB, or standard USB with power brick) and routes input voltages appropriately.

- When operating in RS-485 mode, the +38 V dc is converted to +24 V dc and the +5 V dc is passed straight through.
- When operating in RS-232 or USB mode, the +24 V dc is passed through and is also converted to +5 V dc.

Note: Both voltage sources should not be connected to the printer at the same time, even if one of the sources is powered off. System damage could occur under these conditions.

RS-485 serial I/O parameters

Printer Address:	35
AWAIT-60H	extra stop bits (after printer address)
BWAIT-48H	extra bits/byte (after printer data bytes)

For more information about serial I/O communications, see *4680 Store Systems Serial I/O Channel Attachment Information*, which is available from IBM Industry Corporate Relations.

Cash drawer connector pin assignments

The SureMark printers have a single cash drawer connector. This connector can drive either a single cash drawer (see “Description of models” on page 4 for the cable part number) or two cash drawers using a special cable. The connector also provides a status line which indicates if one of the cash drawers is open.

Drive voltage for each cash drawer solenoid is 24 V dc at a current of 1 ampere.

Connector pins are assigned as follows:

Pin	Signal
1	Not Connected
2	Solenoid 1 Driver
3	Cash Drawer Status
4	+24 V dc
5	Solenoid 2 Driver
6	Ground

The cash drawer solenoids should be connected between pins 4 and 2 for cash drawer 1 and between pins 4 and 5 for cash drawer 2. A “Y” cable is required to bring out all the appropriate lines to attach the two units.

The cash drawer status line has a 10k resistor pull-up connected to the +5 V dc.

Note: The drawer sensor should switch pin 6 to pin 3 when the drawer is open.

RS-232 connector pin assignments

SureMark printers contain a 9-pin D-shell connector port for RS-232 communication. This port is on the interface card, accessible under the printer without removing printer covers. The connector has the following pin functions:

Pin	Signal
1	Not Connected
2	Transmit
3	Receive
4	DTR (Not connected on 3-wire cable)
5	Signal Ground
6	DSR (Not connected on 3-wire cable)
7	Not Connected
8	RTS
9	Not Connected

See “Description of models” on page 4 for the cable part number.

RS-232 parameters

Protocol

DTR/DSR mode or XON/XOFF mode. Dip switch selectable.

Baud rate

9600 or 19 200, selectable by DIP switch

Start 1 bit

Data 8 bits

Parity None

Stop 1 bit

Table 7. 9-pin to 9-pin RS-232 connector layout

System Description	Printer Description
Pin 2 - Rx (input)	Pin 2- Tx (Output)
Pin 3 - Tx (Output)	Pin 3 - Rx (Input)
Pin 4 - DTR (Output)	Pin 4 - DTR (Input)
Pin 5 - Gnd	Pin 5 - Gnd
Pin 6 - DSR (Input)	Pin 6 - DSR (Output)
Pin 8 - CTS (Input)	Pin 8 - RTS (Output)

Table 8. 25-pin to 25-pin RS-232 connector layout

System Description	Printer Description
Pin 2 - Tx (Output)	Pin 3 - Rx (Input)
Pin 3 - Rx (Input)	Pin 2 - Tx (Output)
Pin 5 - CTS (Input)	Pin 8 - RTS (Output)
Pin 6 - DSR (Input)	Pin 6 - DSR (Output)
Pin 7 - Gnd	Pin 5 - Gnd
Pin 20 - DTR (Output)	Pin 4 - DTR (Input)

USB connector pin assignments

SureMark printers contain a USB port, if the USB feature is installed. This port is on the interface card, accessible under the printer without removing printer covers. Connection to the port can be with either the standard USB Type B connector, which requires a 24-volt power brick, or with the powered USB connector, which contains 24-volt power lines within the communications cable.

The standard USB Type B connector has the following pin functions:

Pin	Signal
1	Vbus (+5 V dc)
2	Minus data
3	Plus data
4	Ground

The powered USB connector has the following pin functions:

Pin	Signal
1	Ground (+24 V dc)
2	+24 V dc
3	Ground (Vbus)
4	Plus data
5	Minus data
6	Vbus +5 V dc
7	+24 V dc
8	Ground (+24 V dc)

See “Description of models” on page 4 for the cable part numbers.

Code page definitions

The SureMark printer has a resident character set that supports these code pages:

- Generic
- 437 (US)
- 850 (International) – Models TI1 and TI2 only
- 858 (International) – Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6
- 860 (Portuguese)
- 863 (Canadian French)
- 865 (Norwegian)

Note: Code page 850 contains all characters from code page 858, except the EURO character.

Four user-defined character sets for thermal printing and two character sets for impact printing can be downloaded, if desired, using the 4610 Installation Utility Diskette. See “Resources on the Internet” on page 44 for more information.

Generic code page

Hex1st 2nd	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_	8_	9_	A_	B_	C_	D_	E_	F_
_0		0	@	P	.	p	Ç	É	á	.	.	H.		Õ
_1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	ü	æ	í	↑	.	I	ð	μ
_2	"	2	B	R	b	r	é	Æ	ó	↓	.	|||	Ð	þ
_3	#	3	C	S	c	s	â	ô	ú	←	.	.	Ê	þ
_4	\$	4	D	T	d	t	ä	ö	ñ	→	.	.	Ë	Ú
_5	%	5	E	U	e	u	à	ò	Ñ	Á:	.	.	È	Û
_6	&	6	F	V	f	v	å	û	Ğ	Â	ã	.	Í	Ù
_7	'	7	G	W	g	w	ç	ù	ğ	À	Ã	.	Î	Ý
_8	(	8	H	X	h	x	ê	ÿ	ı	İ	Ł	.	Ï	Ý
_9	)	9	I	Y	i	y	ë	Ö	°	†	ŕ	.	ì	±
_A	*	:	J	Z	j	z	è	Ü	Pt	||	⌞	©	Ó	÷
_B	+	;	K	[	k	{	ï	ø	¥	⌏	⌘	™	β	.
_C	,	<	L	\	l	l	î	£	§	⌐	⌑	sm	Ô	⌘
_D	-	=	M	]	m	}	ì	Ø	i	¢	=	.	Ò	■
_E	.	>	N	^	n	~	Ä	Ş	®	€	†	.		
_F	/	?	O	_	o	.	Å	ş	®	★	☉	.	õ	►

Figure 40. Printer's Resident Character Set - Generic Code Page

Code page 437

Hex 1st 2nd →	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_	8_	9_	A_	B_	C_	D_	E_	F_
_0	.	0	@	P	.	p	Ç	É	á	.	.	.	.	.
_1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	ü	æ	í	.	.	.	β	±
_2	"	2	B	R	b	r	é	Æ	ó	.	.	.	.	.
_3	#	3	C	S	c	s	â	ô	ú	.	.	.	.	.
_4	\$	4	D	T	d	t	ä	ö	ñ	.	.	.	.	.
_5	%	5	E	U	e	u	à	ò	Ñ	.	.	.	.	.
_6	&	6	F	V	f	v	å	û	.	.	.	.	μ	÷
_7	'	7	G	W	g	w	ç	ù	.	.	.	.	.	.
_8	(	8	H	X	h	x	ê	ÿ	ı	.	ℓ	.	.	.
_9	)	9	I	Y	i	y	ë	Ö	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	.	.
_A	*	:	J	Z	è	z	è	Ü	.	||	⊥	.	.	.
_B	+	;	K	[	k	{	ï	ç	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	.	.
_C	,	<	L	\	l	l	î	£	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	.	.
_D	-	=	M	]	m	}	ì	.	i	.	=	.	.	.
_E	.	>	N	^	n	~	Ä	.	.	.	ƒ	.	.	H
_F	/	?	O	-	o	.	Å	.	.	.	.	.	.	I

Figure 41. Code Page 437

Code page 858

Hex 1st 2nd →	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_	8_	9_	A_	B_	C_	D_	E_	F_
_0	.	0	@	P	.	p	Ç	É	á	.	.	ð	Ó	.
_1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	ü	æ	í	.	.	Ð	β	±
_2	"	2	B	R	b	r	é	Æ	ó	.	.	Ê	Ô	.
_3	#	3	C	S	c	s	â	ô	ú	.	.	Ë	Ò	.
_4	\$	4	D	T	d	t	ä	ö	ñ	.	.	È	õ	.
_5	%	5	E	U	e	u	à	ò	Ñ	Á	.	€	Õ	.
_6	&	6	F	V	f	v	å	û	Ğ	Â	.	Í	μ	÷
_7	'	7	G	W	g	w	ç	ù	ğ	À	.	Î	ρ	.
_8	(	8	H	X	h	x	ê	ÿ	ı	İ	ℓ	İ	ρ	.
_9	)	9	I	Y	i	y	ë	Ö	.	‡	ƒ	.	Ú	.
_A	*	:	J	Z	j	z	è	Ü	.	‖	‡	.	Û	
_B	+	;	K	[	k	{	ï	ø	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	Ù	.
_C	,	<	L	\	l	l	î	£	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	ý	.
_D	-	=	M	]	m	}	ì	Ø	i	ç	=	.	Ý	.
_E	.	>	N	^	n	~	Ä	Ş	.	.	‡	ì	.	H
_F	/	?	O	-	o	.	Å	ş	.	.	α	.	.	I

Figure 42. Code Page 858

Code page 860

Hex 1st 2nd →	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_	8_	9_	A_	B_	C_	D_	E_	F_
_0	.	0	@	P	.	p	Ç	É	á	.	.	.	.	.
_1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	ü	À	í	.	.	.	β	±
_2	"	2	B	R	b	r	é	È	ó	.	.	.	.	.
_3	#	3	C	S	c	s	â	ô	ú	.	.	.	.	.
_4	\$	4	D	T	d	t	ã	õ	ñ	.	.	.	.	.
_5	%	5	E	U	e	u	à	ò	Ñ	.	.	.	.	.
_6	&	6	F	V	f	v	Á	Ú	.	.	.	.	μ	÷
_7	'	7	G	W	g	w	ç	ù	.	.	.	.	.	.
_8	(	8	H	X	h	x	ê	ì	¿	.	ℓ	.	.	.
_9	)	9	I	Y	i	y	Ê	Õ	Ò	‡	ƒ	.	.	.
_A	*	:	J	Z	j	z	è	Ü	.	||	⊥	.	.	.
_B	+	;	K	[	k	{	ì	ç	.	ƒ	π	.	.	.
_C	,	<	L	\	l	l	Ô	£	.	ƒ	†	.	.	.
_D	-	=	M	]	m	}	ì	Ù	i	.	=	.	.	.
_E	.	>	N	^	n	~	Ã	.	.	.	‡	.	.	H
_F	/	?	O	_	o	.	Â	Ó	.	.	.	.	.	I

Figure 43. Code Page 860

Code page 863

Hex 1st 2nd →	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_	8_	9_	A_	B_	C_	D_	E_	F_
_0	.	0	@	P	.	p	Ç	É	.	.	.	.	.	.
_1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	ü	È	.	.	.	.	β	±
_2	"	2	B	R	b	r	é	Ê	ó	.	.	.	.	.
_3	#	3	C	S	c	s	â	ô	ú	.	.	.	.	.
_4	\$	4	D	T	d	t	Â	Ë	.	.	.	.	.	.
_5	%	5	E	U	e	u	à	Ï	.	.	.	.	.	.
_6	&	6	F	V	f	v	.	û	.	.	.	.	μ	÷
_7	'	7	G	W	g	w	ç	ù	.	.	.	.	.	.
_8	(	8	H	X	h	x	ê	α	î	.	ℓ	.	.	.
_9	)	9	I	Y	i	y	ë	Ô	.	‡	ƒ	.	.	.
_A	*	:	J	Z	j	z	è	Ü	.	||	⊥	.	.	.
_B	+	;	K	[	k	{	ï	ç	.	⌈	⌋	.	.	.
_C	,	<	L	\	l	l	î	£	.	⌋	⌈	.	.	.
_D	-	=	M	]	m	}	=	Ù	.	.	=	.	.	.
_E	.	>	N	^	n	~	À	Û	.	.	‡	.	.	H
_F	/	?	O	_	o	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	I

Figure 44. Code Page 863

Code page 865

Hex 1st 2nd →	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_	8_	9_	A_	B_	C_	D_	E_	F_
_0	.	0	@	P	.	p	Ç	É	á	.	.	.	.	.
_1	!	1	A	Q	a	q	ü	æ	í	.	.	.	β	±
_2	"	2	B	R	b	r	é	Æ	ó	.	.	.	.	.
_3	#	3	C	S	c	s	â	ô	ú	.	.	.	.	.
_4	\$	4	D	T	d	t	ä	ö	ñ	.	.	.	.	.
_5	%	5	E	U	e	u	à	ò	Ñ	.	.	.	.	.
_6	&	6	F	V	f	v	å	û	.	.	.	.	μ	÷
_7	'	7	G	W	g	w	ç	ù	.	.	.	.	.	.
_8	(	8	H	X	h	x	ê	ÿ	ı	.	ℓ	.	.	.
_9	)	9	I	Y	i	y	ë	Ö	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	.	.
_A	*	:	J	Z	j	z	è	Ü	.	||	⌚	.	.	.
_B	+	;	K	[	k	{	ï	ø	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	.	.
_C	,	<	L	\	l	l	î	£	.	ƒ	ƒ	.	.	.
_D	-	=	M	]	m	}	ì	Ø	i	.	=	.	.	.
_E	.	>	N	^	n	~	Ä	.	.	.	ƒ	.	.	H
_F	/	?	O	-	o	.	Å	.	œ	.	.	.	.	I

Figure 45. Code Page 865

Character fonts

This section describes font capabilities. For more information about font-related commands, see:

- “Download user-defined characters” on page 116
- “Set print station” on page 131
- “Set print mode” on page 127
- “Set code page” on page 131
- “Set inter-character spacing” on page 132
- “Select user-defined or resident character sets” on page 131

Thermal printing font

There are three font sizes for the resident character set on Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6 (only fonts A and B are available for Models TI1 and TI2):

- Font A is 10 dots (wide) × 20 dots (high) with the last 2-dot row used for descenders (1.25-mm × 2.5-mm character height including descenders, 1.25 mm × 2.25 mm excluding descenders).
- Font B is 12 dots (wide) × 24 dots (high) with the last 2-dot row used for descenders (1.5-mm × 3.0-mm character height including descenders, 1.5 mm × 2.75 mm excluding descenders).
- Font C is 8 dots (wide) × 16 dots (high) with the last 2-dot row used for descenders (1.0-mm × 2.0-mm character height including descenders, 1.0 mm × 1.75 mm excluding descenders).

- Font C, starting with level 38 micro code is 8 dots (wide) and 20 dots (high) with the last 2-dot row used for descenders (1.0-mm × 2.5-mm character height including descenders, 1.0 mm × 2.25 mm excluding descenders).

The number of characters printed per inch depends on the character size, the inter-character spacing, and the chosen font. For example:

- 17 cpi ⇒ 10-dot wide character + 2-dot space (font A) ⇒ 48 characters per line
- 15 cpi ⇒ 10-dot wide character + 3-dot space (font A) ⇒ 44 characters per line
- 12 cpi ⇒ 12-dot wide character + 5-dot space (font B) ⇒ 34 characters per line
- 20 cpi ⇒ 8-dot wide character + 2-dot space (font C) ⇒ 57 characters per line

You can choose the character size of four user-defined character sets (code pages) or two proportional fonts. The parameter ranges for user-defined character sets are:

- $8 \leq \text{dot width} \leq 16$
- $16 \leq \text{dot height} \leq 32$ (must be a multiple of 2)

The parameter ranges for characters in proportional fonts are:

- $8 \leq \text{dot width} \leq 32$
- $8 \leq \text{dot height} \leq 32$

Notes:

1. Any of the thermal printing fonts can be scaled up to eight times the defined width and eight times the defined height. The scaling factor for the width does not have to equal the scaling factor for the height. For example, you could specify twice the width and five times the height.
2. For paper that has a width of 80 mm, the cash receipt print line is 72 mm (2.83 in.) long. There are 576 dots per line and 203 dots per inch.

Impact printing fonts (Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4)

The resident character set has a font of 7 half-dots (wide) × 9 dots (high). There are no descenders.

- Font A prints 150 half-dots per inch = resident character size is 1.2 mm × 2 mm.
- Font B prints 120 half-dots per inch = resident character size is 1.5 mm × 2 mm.

The number of characters printed per inch depends on the character size, the inter-character spacing, and the chosen font. For example:

- 17 cpi ⇒ font A with 7 half-dot-wide character + 2 half-dot space ⇒ 52 characters per line
- 15 cpi ⇒ font A with 7 half-dot-wide character + 3 half-dot space ⇒ 47 characters per line
- 12 cpi ⇒ font B with 7 half-dot-wide character + 3 half-dot space ⇒ 37 characters per line

You can choose the character size of the two user-defined character sets (code pages) within the following parameters:

- $4 \leq \text{half-dot width} \leq 16$
- $4 \leq \text{dot height} \leq 16$

Notes:

1. Any of the impact printing fonts can be printed double-wide, double-high, or both double-wide and double-high unless the dot height is more than 9. With Models TI1 and TI2, you cannot print the character double-high if its dot height is more than 9. For better print quality with double-high characters, set the printer to unidirectional print mode. (See “Set or cancel unidirectional printing” on page 130.)

2. User-defined characters greater than 9 dots high cannot be printed in landscape mode.
3. The portrait document print line is 80.35 mm (3.16 inches) long. There are 474 half-dots per line for font A, and 379 half-dots per line for font B. The landscape print line depends on the size of the document inserted.
4. You can print in two densities on the impact printer: 120 half-dots per inch or 150 half-dots per inch. Refer to the description of bits 0 and 1 in "Set print mode" on page 127 for information about changing the density.

Appendix C. RS-232 programming information

RS-232 commands summary by function	100
Alphabetized RS-232 commands summary	105
System commands	109
Exercise program	109
Verify previous commands completed	109
Status request	109
Extended address command—request printer ID	109
Preset or Onetime-Set commands	111
All models	111
Model TI8 only	111
Download graphics (logo) Commands	112
Predefine messages	114
Download user-defined characters	116
Thermal code page	116
Proportional font	117
Impact code page	119
Flash storage write	120
Erase flash EPROM sector	121
Send checksum of flash EPROM sector	121
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading	122
Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading (Model TI8 only)	122
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request	123
Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request (Model TI8 only)	126
Setup commands	127
Set print mode	127
Set or cancel double-wide mode	128
Set or cancel double-high mode	128
Set or cancel underline mode	129
Set or cancel overline mode	129
Set or cancel invert mode	129
Set or cancel emphasized printing	129
Set or cancel high-quality print mode	130
Set or cancel unidirectional printing	130
Set print station	131
Select user-defined or resident character sets	131
Set code page	131
Set inter-character spacing	132
Set or cancel rotated characters	132
Set print station parameters.	133
Select 1/8-inch line spacing.	133
Select 1/6-inch line spacing.	133
Select color printing.	134
Set line spacing using minimum units	134
Set sheet eject length	135
Set horizontal tab positions	135
Set left margin position	136
Set relative position.	136
Align positions.	137
Set error recovery function	137
Define document wait time	138
Status sent to system	139
Select character for reprinted lines	139
Reinitialize the printer	139

Enable or disable the feed buttons (Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)	140
Enable or disable the beeper (Models TF6 and TM6 only)	141
Enable or disable upside-down printing	142
Select character size for scalable fonts	142
Fix font matrix.	143
Print logo inline	143
Select thermal paper	144
Bar code commands	144
Print bar code	145
Print bar code examples	147
Select horizontal size of bar code	148
Select bar code height	148
Select printing position of human readable information (HRI)	148
Select font for HRI	149
Print PDF417 bar code	149
Select PDF417 ECC (error correction codewords) level	149
Select aspect ratio PDF417 bar code	150
Enable PDF417 truncation	151
Print character commands	151
Print and line feed	151
Print and line feed	151
Print, form feed, and cut the paper (FF)	151
Print and feed paper n lines.	152
Print and feed paper using minimum units	152
Print graphic messages	152
Select and print a graphics (logo) command.	152
Print predefined graphics (logo) command	154
Print predefined messages	155
Miscellaneous commands	155
Tab to next tab stop	155
Return home (select printhead location)	155
Paper cut/DI eject	156
Generate drive pulse for cash drawer	156
Retrieve the flash storage	156
Retrieve size of user flash storage	157
Retrieve printer usage statistics	157
Check processing commands (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)	158
Model TI8 read commands	158
MICR read	159
Flip check	160
Asynchronous (real-time) commands	161
Real-time requests	161
Data buffer management and batch printing	162
Reset line count	162
Disable line count	162
Hold printing until buffer is released	162
Document handling	163
Portrait mode	163
Landscape mode	164
Landscape printing commands	164
Status summary	165
Message from the printer.	165
Status byte 1	166
Status byte 2	166
Status byte 3	167

	Status byte 4	167
	Status byte 5	167
	Status byte 6	167
	Status byte 7	168
	Status byte 8	168
|	Document scanner commands.	169
|	Start scan	169
|	Print scanned image	170
|	Store scanned image	171
|	Retrieve scanned image	175
|	Scanner calibration	176
|	Retrieve next image location	176
|	Retrieve first unread image location.	176
|	Select compression format and scanned image threshold.	177
|	Page mode printing commands	178
|	Select page mode	178
|	Select standard mode	178
|	Select printable area	179
|	Select printing direction/position	179
|	Set vertical position.	180
|	Set relative vertical position.	180
|	Set left margin position (standard mode), set absolute print position (page mode)	181
|	Set relative horizontal position	182
|	Set printing position.	182
|	Print and form feed and cut the paper	183
|	Print page in page mode	183
|	Clear print data in page mode	183

This information applies only to SureMark printers that attach to a POS system with an RS-232 cable connection.

If you use the RS-485 or USB communications interface, refer to either the SureMark driver documentation in the appropriate IBM book for your operating system (see Table 9) or, when using OPOS drivers, to the *OLE for Retail POS Application Programming Guide*.

Table 9. Driver documentation by operating system

Operating System	IBM Publication
4690 OS Version 1 and Version 2	IBM 4690 OS API Specification for IBM 4610 Printers
DOS	IBM Point-of-Sale Subsystem for DOS Programming Reference
OS/2, Windows NT, Windows 95, and Windows 3.1x	IBM Point of Sale Subsystem Programming Reference and User's Guide

The 4690 OS manual is available on the current maintenance diskette for the IBM 4690 Operating System. Current versions of all three manuals are available on the Internet. See "Resources on the Internet" on page 44 for more information.

RS-232 commands summary by function

The commands listed in Table 10 are described in detail in following sections of this appendix.

Table 10. RS-232 commands organized by function

Description	Command	Page
System Commands		
Exercise Program	ESC x or X'1B78'	109
Status request	ESC v or X'1B76'	109
Extended address command-request printer ID	GS | SOH or X'1D49;01' This is an IMMEDIATE command.	109
Verify previous commands completed	X'1B;00;80;00'	109
Preset or Onetime-Set Commands		
Download graphics (logo) commands	GS * logo# n1 n2 data or X'1D2A';logo#;n1;n2;data	112
Predefine messages	GS : message# data GS : or X'1D3A; message#;data;'X'1D3A'	114
Download user-defined characters	ESC & s n m data or X'1B26;s;n;m;data'	116
Thermal code page	MCT commands	116
Proportional font	ESC & s n m data or X'1B;26;s;n;m;data'	117
Flash storage write	ESC ' n1 n2 data or X'1B27;n1;n2;data'	120
Erase flash EPROM sector	ESC # n or X'1B23;n'	121
Send checksum of flash EPROM sector	ESC " n or X'1B22;n'	121
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading	ESC M n h l or X'1B4D;n;h;l'.	122

Table 10. RS-232 commands organized by function (continued)

Description	Command	Page
Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading (Model TI8)	ESC M <i>n h l</i> or X'1B4D; <i>n</i> ;h;l.	122
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request	ESC S <i>n</i> or X'1B53; <i>n</i> '	123
Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request (Model TI8)	ESC S <i>n</i> or X'1B53; <i>n</i> '	126
Setup Commands		
Set print mode	ESC ! <i>n</i> or X'1B21; <i>n</i> '	127
Set or cancel double-wide mode	ESC W <i>n</i> or X'1B57; <i>n</i> '	128
Set or cancel double-high mode	ESC h <i>n</i> or X'1B68; <i>n</i> '	128
Set or cancel underline mode	ESC – <i>n</i> or X'1B2D; <i>n</i> :'	129
Set or cancel overline mode	ESC x'5F' <i>n</i> or X'1B5F; <i>n</i> '	129
Set or cancel invert mode	ESC H <i>n</i> or X'1B48; <i>n</i> '	129
Set or cancel emphasized printing	ESC G <i>n</i> or X'1B47; <i>n</i> '	129
Set or cancel high-quality print mode	ESC / <i>n</i> or X'1B;2F; <i>n</i> '	130
Set or cancel unidirectional printing	ESC U <i>n</i> or X'1B55; <i>n</i> '	130
Set or cancel rotated character	ESC V <i>n</i> or X'1B56; <i>n</i> '	132
Set print station	ESC c 0 <i>n</i> or X'1B6330; <i>n</i> '	131
Select user-defined or resident character sets	ESC % <i>n</i> or X'1B25; <i>n</i> '	131
Set code page	ESC t <i>n</i> or X'1B74; <i>n</i> '	131
Set inter-character spacing	ESC SP <i>n</i> or X'1B20; <i>n</i> '	132
Set print station parameters	ESC c 1 <i>n</i> or X'1B6331; <i>n</i> '	133.
Select 1/8-inch line spacing	ESC 1 or X'1B31'.	133
Select 1/6-inch line spacing	ESC 2 or X'1B32'	133
Select color printing	ESC r <i>n</i> or X'1B;72; <i>n</i> '	134
Set line spacing using minimum units	ESC 3 <i>n</i> or X'1B33; <i>n</i> '	134
Set sheet eject length	ESC C <i>n</i> or X'1B43; <i>n</i> '	135
Set horizontal tab positions	ESC D [<i>n1 n2</i>] NUL NUL or X'1B44[<i>n1 n2</i>]0000'	135
Set left margin position	ESC \$ <i>n1 n2</i> or X'1B24; <i>n1</i> ; <i>n2</i> '	136
Set relative position	ESC \ <i>n1 n2</i> or X'1B5C; <i>n1</i> ; <i>n2</i> '	136
Align positions	ESC a <i>n</i> or X'1B61; <i>n</i> '.	137
Set error recovery function	ESC c 4 <i>n</i> or X'1B63;34; <i>n</i> '	137
Define document wait time	ESC f <i>x y</i> or X'1B66; <i>x</i> ; <i>y</i> '	138
Status sent to system	ESC) <i>n</i> or X'1B29; <i>n</i> '	139
Select character for reprinted lines	ESC + <i>n</i> or X'1B2B; <i>n</i> '	139
Reinitialize the printer	ESC @ or X'1B40'.	139
Enable/disable the feed buttons	ESC c 5 <i>n</i> X'1B;63;35; <i>n</i> '	140.

Table 10. RS-232 commands organized by function (continued)

Description	Command	Page
Enable/disable the beeper	ESC BEL <i>n1 n2</i> or X'1B;07; <i>n1;n2</i> '	141
Enable/disable upside-down printing	ESC { <i>n</i> or X'1B 7B <i>n</i> '	142
Select character size for scalable fonts	GS ! <i>n</i> or X'1D;21; <i>n</i> '	142
Fix font matrix	ESC : <i>n</i> or X'1B 3A <i>n</i> '	143
Print logo inline	GS J <i>d n1 n2 data</i> or X'1D 4A <i>d n1 n2 data</i> '	143
Enable/disable two-color printing	GS ; <i>n</i> or X'1D 3B <i>n</i> '	144
Bar Code Commands		
Print bar code	GS k <i>n</i> NUL or X'1D6B; <i>n</i> ;data;00'	145
Select horizontal size of bar code	GS w <i>n</i> or X'1D77; <i>n</i> '	148
Select bar code height	GS h <i>n</i> or X'1D68; <i>n</i> '	148
Select printing position of human-readable information (HRI)	GS H <i>n</i> or X'1D48; <i>n</i> '	148
Select font for HRI	GS f <i>n</i> or X'1D66; <i>n</i> '	149
Print PDF417 Bar Code	GS P <i>data</i> NUL or X'1D;50;data;00'	149
Select PDF417 Error Correction Codewords Level	GS R <i>n</i> or X'1D;52; <i>n1;n2</i> '	149
Select Aspect Ratio PDF417 Bar Code	GS S <i>r;c</i> or X'1D;53; <i>r;c</i> '	150
Enable PDF417 Truncation	GS T <i>n</i> or X'1D;54; <i>n</i> '	151
Print Character Commands		
Print and line feed	LF or X'0A'	151
Print and line feed	CR or X'0D'	151
Print, form feed, and cut the paper (FF)	FF or X'0C'	151
Print and feed paper <i>n</i> lines	ESC d <i>n</i> or X'1B64; <i>n</i> '	152
Print and feed paper using minimum units	ESC J <i>n</i> X'1B4A; <i>n</i> '	152
Print Graphic Messages		
Select and print a graphics (logo) command	ESC * <i>d w h data</i> or X'1B2A; <i>d</i> ; <i>w</i> ; <i>h</i> ;data'	152
Print predefined graphics (logo) command	GS / <i>m logo#</i> or X'1D2F; <i>m</i> ;logo#'	154
Print predefined messages	GS ^ <i>message#</i> or X'1D5E;message#'	155.
Miscellaneous Commands		
Tab to next tab stop	HT or X'09'	155
Return home (select printhead location)	ESC < <i>n</i> or 1B3C; <i>n</i>	155
Paper cut/DI eject	ESC i or ESC m -- X'1B69' or X'1B;6D'	156
Generate drive pulse for cash drawer	ESC p <i>m n1 n2</i> or X'1B70; <i>m</i> ; <i>n1;n2</i> '	156.
Retrieve the flash storage	ESC 4 <i>n1 n2</i> X'1B34; <i>n1;n2</i> '	156

Table 10. RS-232 commands organized by function (continued)

Description	Command	Page
Retrieve size of user flash storage	ESC 4 x '03 FF FF FF' or X'1B;34;03;FF;FF;FF'	157
Retrieve printer usage statistics	X'1B 51 xx'	157
Check Processing Commands		
MICR read	ESC I or X'1B49'	159
Flip check	ESC 5 or X'1B35'	160
Asynchronous (Real-Time) Commands		
Real-time requests	DLE ENQ <i>n</i> or X'1005 <i>n</i> '	161
	n Description	
	31 Release print buffer	
	32 Cancel print buffer	
	33 Undefined	
	34 EC request; send status	
	35 Undefined	
	36 Undefined	
	37 Undefined	
	38 Undefined	
	40 Reset printer	
	41 Enable unsolicited status	
	42 Disable unsolicited status	
	43 Disable transparent XON/XOFF	
Data Buffer Management and Batch Printing		
Reset line count	ESC 6 or X'1B36'	162
Disable line count	ESC 8 <i>n</i> or X'1B;38' <i>n</i>	162
Hold printing until buffer is released	ESC 7 or X'1B37'	162
Document Scanner Commands		
Start scan	X'1B;3E; <i>n</i> '	169
Print scanned image	X'1B;30; <i>n</i> 1; <i>x</i> ;y; <i>dx</i> ;dy; <i>s</i> 1; <i>s</i> 2; <i>n</i> 2'	170
Store scanned image	X'1B;41; <i>n</i> 1; <i>x</i> 0; <i>y</i> 0; <i>dx</i> 0; <i>dy</i> 0; <i>x</i> 1; <i>y</i> 1; <i>dx</i> 1; <i>dy</i> 1; <i>x</i> 2; <i>y</i> 2; <i>dx</i> 2; <i>dy</i> 2; <i>x</i> 3; <i>y</i> 3; <i>dx</i> 3; <i>dy</i> 3; <i>tagdata</i> '	171
Retrieve scanned image	X'1B;39; <i>n</i> 1; <i>n</i> 2; <i>n</i> 3'	175
Scanner calibration	GS c 0 or X'1D 63 30'	176
Retrieve next image location	GS N SOH NULL or X'1D 4E 01 00'	176
Retrieve first unread image location	GS N SOH SOH or X'1D 4E 01 01'	176
Select compression format and scanned image threshold	X'1B;4d; <i>x</i> ; <i>n</i> 1; <i>n</i> 2'	177
Page Mode Printing Commands		
Select page mode	ESC L or X'1B;4C'	178
Select standard mode	ESC S or X'1B;4f'	178

Table 10. RS-232 commands organized by function (continued)

Description	Command	Page
Select printable area	ESC X or X'1B;58;x;y;dx;dy'	179
Select printing direction/position	ESC T <i>n</i> or X'1B;54; <i>n</i> '	179
Set vertical position	GS \$ <i>y</i> or X'1D;24; <i>y</i> '	180
Set relative vertical position	GS \ <i>y</i> or X'1D;5C; <i>y</i> '	180
Set left margin position (standard mode), Set absolute print position (page mode)	ESC \$ <i>n1 n2</i> or X'1B;24; <i>n1;n2</i> '	181
Set relative horizontal position	ESC <5C>h <i>n1 n2</i> or X'1B;5C; <i>n1;n2</i> '	182
Set printing position	GS] <i>x y</i> or X'1D;5D; <i>x;y</i> '	182
Print and form feed and cut the paper	FF or X'0C'	183
Print page in page mode	ESC FF or X'1B 0C'	183
Clear print data in page mode	CAN or X'18'	183

Alphabetized RS-232 commands summary

Table 11. RS-232 commands in alphabetical order

Description	Command	Page
Align positions	ESC a <i>n</i> or X'1B61;n'	137
Clear print data in page mode	CAN or X'18'	183
Disable line count	ESC 8 <i>n</i> or X'1B;38'n	162
Define document wait time	ESC f <i>x y</i> or X'1B66;x;y'	138
Download graphics (logo) commands	GS * <i>logo# n1 n2 data</i> or X'1D2A;logo#;n1;n2;data'	112
Download user-defined characters	ESC & <i>s n m data</i> or X'1B26;s;n;m;data'	116
Enable PDF417 Truncation	GS T <i>n</i> or X'1D;54;n'	151
Enable/disable the beeper	ESC BEL <i>n1 n2</i> or X'1B;07;n1;n2'	141
Enable/disable the feed buttons	ESC c 5 <i>n</i> X'1B;63;35;n'	140.
Enable/disable two-color printing	GS ; <i>n</i> or X'1D 3B <i>n</i> '	144
Enable/disable upside-down printing	ESC { <i>n</i> or X'1B 7B <i>n</i> '	142
Erase flash EPROM sector	ESC # <i>n</i> or X'1B23;n'	121
Exercise program	ESC x or X'1B;78'	109
Extended address command-request printer id	GS l or X'1D49;01'	109
Fix font matrix	ESC : <i>n</i> or X'1B 3A <i>n</i> '	143
Flash storage write	ESC ' <i>n1 n2 data</i> or X'1B27;n1;n2;data'	120
Flip check	ESC 5 or X'1B35'	160
Generate drive pulse for cash drawer	ESC p <i>m n1 n2</i> or X'1B70;m;n1;n2'	156
Hold printing until buffer is released	ESC 7 or X'1B37'	162
Impact code page	MCT commands.	119
MICR read	ESC l or X'1B49'	159
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading	ESC M <i>n h l</i> or X'1B4D;n;h;l'	122
Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request	ESC S <i>n</i> or X'1B53;n'	123
Paper cut/DI eject	ESC i or ESC m or X'1B69' or X'1B;6D'	156
Predefine messages	GS : <i>message# data</i> GS : or X'1D3A;message#;data;1D3A'	114
Print and feed paper <i>n</i> lines	ESC d <i>n</i> or X'1B64;n'	152
Print and feed paper using minimum units	ESC J <i>n</i> or X'1B4A;n'	
Print and form feed and cut the paper	FF or X'0C'	183
Print and line feed	LF or X'0A'	151
Print and line feed	CR or X'0D'	151
Print bar code	GS k <i>n</i> NUL or X'1D6B;n;data;00'	145
Print logo inline	GS J <i>d n1 n2 data</i> or X'1D 4A <i>d n1 n2 data</i> '	143
Print page in page mode	ESC FF or X'1B 0C'	183

Table 11. RS-232 commands in alphabetical order (continued)

Description	Command	Page
Print PDF417 bar code	GS P <i>data</i> NUL or X'1D;50;data;00'	149
Print predefined graphics (logo) command	GS / <i>m logo#</i> or X'1D2F;m;logo#'	154
Print predefined messages	GS ^ <i>message#</i> or X'1D5E;message#'	155
I Print scanned image	X'1B;30;n1;x;y;dx;dy;s1;s2;n2'	170
Proportional font	ESC & <i>s n m data</i> or X'1B;26;s;n;m;data'	117
Real-time requests	DLE ENQ <i>m</i> or X'1005n' <div> n Description 31 Release print buffer 32 Cancel print buffer 33 Undefined 34 EC request; send status 35 Undefined 36 Undefined 37 Undefined 38 Undefined 40 Reset printer 41 Enable unsolicited status 42 Disable unsolicited status 43 Disable transparent XON/XOFF </div>	161
Reinitialize the printer	ESC @ or X'1B40'	139
Reset line count	ESC 6 or X'1B36'	162
I Retrieve first unread image location	GS N SOH SOH or X'1D 4E 01 01'	176
I Retrieve next image location	GS N SOH NULL or X'1D 4E 01 00'	176
Retrieve printer usage statistics	X'1B 51 xx'	157
I Retrieve scanned image	X'1B;39;n1;n2;n3'	175
Retrieve size of user flash storage	ESC 4 x '03 FF FF FF' or X'1B;34;03;FF;FF;FF'	157
Retrieve the flash storage	ESC 4 <i>n1 n2</i> X'1B34;n1;n2'	156
Return home (select printhead location)	ESC < <i>n</i> or X'1B3C;n'	155
I Scanner calibration	GS c 0 or X'1D 63 30'	176
Select and print a graphics (logo) command	ESC * <i>d w h data</i> or X'1B2A;d;w;h;data'	152
Select Aspect Ratio PDF417 Bar Code	GS S <i>r;c</i> or X'1D;53;r;c'	150
Select bar code height	GS h <i>n</i> or X'1D68;n'	148
Select character for reprinted lines	ESC + <i>n</i> or X'1B2B;n'	139
Select character size for scalable fonts	GS ! <i>n</i> or X'1D;21;n'	142
Select color printing	ESC r <i>n</i> or X'1B;72;n'	134

Table 11. RS-232 commands in alphabetical order (continued)

	Description	Command	Page
I	Select compression format and scanned image threshold	X'1B;4d;x;n1;n2'	177
I	Select font for HRI	GS f n or X'1D66;n'	149
	Select horizontal size of bar code	GS w n or X'1D77;n'	148
I	Select page mode	ESC L or X'1B;4C'	178
	Select PDF417 Error Correction Codewords Level	GS R n or X'1D;52;n1;n2'	149
I	Select printable area	ESC X or X'1B;58;x;y;dx;dy'	179
I	Select printing direction/position	ESC T n or X'1B;54;n'	179
	Select printing position of human-readable information (HRI)	GS H n or X'1D48;n'	148
I	Select standard mode	ESC S or X'1B;4f'	178
	Select user-defined or resident character sets	ESC % n or X'1B25;n'	131
	Select 1/6-inch line spacing	ESC 2 or X'1B32'	133
	Select 1/8-inch line spacing	ESC 1 or X'1B31'	133
	Send checksum of flash EPROM sector	ESC " n or X'1B22;n'	121
	Set code page	ESC t n or X'1B74;n'	131
	Set error recovery function	ESC c 4 n or X'1B63;34;n'	137
	Set horizontal tab positions	ESC D [n1 n2] NUL NUL or X'1B44[n1n2]0000'	135
	Set inter-character spacing	ESC SP n or X'1B20;n'	132
	Set left margin position	ESC \$ n1 n2 or X'1B24;n1;n2'	136
I	Set left margin position (standard mode), Set absolute print position (page mode)	ESC \$ n1 n2 or X'1B;24;n1;n2'	181
I	Set line spacing using minimum units	ESC 3 n or X'1B33;n'	134
	Set or cancel double-high mode	ESC h n or X'1B68;n'	128
	Set or cancel double-wide mode	ESC W n or X'1B57;n'	128
	Set or cancel emphasized printing	ESC G n or X'1B47;n'	129
	Set or cancel high-quality print mode	ESC / n or X'1B;2F;n'	130
	Set or cancel invert mode	ESC H n or X'1B48;n'	129
	Set or cancel overline mode	ESC x'5F' n or X'1B5F;n'	129
	Set or cancel rotated character	ESC V n or X'1B56;n'	132
	Set or cancel underline mode	ESC – n or X'1B2D;n'	129
	Set or cancel unidirectional printing	ESC U n or X'1B55;n'	130
	Set print mode	ESC ! n or X'1B21;n'	127
	Set print station parameters	ESC c 1 n or X'1B63;31;n'	133
	Set print station	ESC c 0 n or X'1B63;30;n'	131
I	Set printing position	GS] x y or X'1D;5D;x;y'	182
I	Set relative horizontal position	ESC <5C>h n1 n2 or X'1B;5C;n1;n2'	182

Table 11. RS-232 commands in alphabetical order (continued)

	Description	Command	Page
	Set relative position	ESC \ <i>n1 n2</i> or X'1B5C; <i>n1;n2</i> '	136
I	Set relative vertical position	GS \ <i>y</i> or X'1D;5C; <i>y</i> '	180
	Set sheet eject length	ESC C <i>n</i> or X'1B43; <i>n</i> '	135
I	Set vertical position	GS \$ <i>y</i> or X'1D;24; <i>y</i> '	180
I	Start scan	X'1B;3E; <i>n</i> '	169
	Status request	ESC v or X'1B76'	109
	Status sent to system	ESC) <i>n</i> or X'1B29; <i>n</i> '	139
I	Store scanned image	X'1B;41; <i>n1;x0;y0;dx0;dy0;x1;y1;dx1;dy1;x2;y2;dx2;dy2;x3;y3;dx3;dy3;tagdata</i> '	171
I	Tab to next tab stop	HT or X'09'	155
	Thermal code page	MCT commands; see Table 13 on page 123.	116
	Verify previous commands completed	X'1B;00;80;00'	109

System commands

Exercise program

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC x or X'1B;78'

Purpose:

This tests printing functions of the printer. A test message is printed. (See Figure 32 on page 63.) If there is a document in the printer, the test message prints on the document. Otherwise, it prints at the customer receipt station.

Error Conditions:

Home Error (on document station only)

Cash Receipt Print Error

Verify previous commands completed

RS-232 Syntax:

X'1B;00;80;00'

Purpose:

This command can be used to ensure that all commands preceding it have been completed. The application would just wait for the status return with status byte 5, bit 1 set.

Remarks:

The printer status is returned in status bytes 1–8. Status byte 5, bit 1 is set after this request has been executed. See “Status summary” on page 165 for more information.

Error Conditions:

None.

Status request

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC v or X'1B;76'

Purpose:

The printer status is sent to the system. This command will be processed in the order it was received.

Remarks:

The printer status is returned in status bytes 1–8. See “Status summary” on page 165 for more information.

Error Conditions:

None.

Extended address command–request printer ID

RS-232 Syntax:

GS | SOH or X'1D;49;01'

Purpose:

This will return 8 bytes of printer status plus 5 bytes of printer-specific information.

Status byte 5, bit 0 is set to 1 when responding to the extended address command. (See “Status summary” on page 165.)

where:

Byte 1

- Device type = X'30' for non-TI8 models and for Model TI8 in TI4 mode
- Device type = X'31' TI8 models in TI8 mode

Byte 2

Device ID

- 00** Models TI1 and TI2 (impact DI/thermal CR)
- 01** Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 (high speed; impact DI/thermal CR)
- 02** Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 with the 2 MB option
- 03** Models TF6 and TM6 (512K; thermal CR)
- 04** Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 with the 8-MB option
- 05** Models TF6 and TM6 with the 8-MB option
- 06** Reserved
- 07** Models TF6 and TM6 with the 2-MB option

Byte 3

First byte of features

Bit 0

- When byte 1 = X'30': Set to 1 when MICR is present
- When byte 1 = X'31': Reserved

Bit 1

- When byte 1 = X'30': Set to 1 when Check Flipper is present
- When byte 1 = X'31': Reserved

Bit 2

- When byte 1 = X'30': Set to 1 when the printer has the 2 MB option
- When byte 1 = X'31': Reserved

Bit 3 Set to 1 when the printer is in XON/XOFF mode

Bit 4 Reserved

Bit 5

- When byte 1 = X'30': Set to 1 when the 2-MB option is used for user flash memory
- When byte 1 = X'31': Reserved

Bit 6 Set to 1 when the printer has capability of printing two colors.

Bit 7 Set to 1 when the printer is in Model 4 emulation mode.

Byte 4

Second byte of features

Bit 0 Set to 1 when printer is set for 58 mm paper

Bit 1 Set to 1 if Model TI8 is in TI4 mode

Bits 2 – 7
Reserved

Byte 5
EC level = EC level of loaded code

Error Conditions:

None.

Remarks:

This is an IMMEDIATE command.

Preset or Onetime-Set commands

All models

The SureMark printer has commands to specialize and tune each printer to improve its usability, performance, and uniqueness. This flexibility is provided through the use of flash erasable programmable read-only memory (flash EPROM) and an electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM). Data in these memory devices will stay valid until it is redefined. This information only needs to be defined once because it will remain for the life of the printer or until it is redefined.

To verify that data was previously stored in the printer, the system can request a checksum on data stored in each sector.

Flash EPROM has 5 sectors. To rewrite information in a sector, you must first erase the sector.

- For logo commands and predefined messages, erasing the sector is necessary only to replace a logo or predefined message number, or when the length of the logo or message exceeds space available in that sector.
- For user flash memory, erasing the sector is necessary only when writing to an address that has already been written to.
- For user-defined thermal and impact characters, new characters can be added if they have the same matrix as characters already in the character set. If new character sets are added, the flash memory does not have to be erased. To replace characters, you must first erase the sector.

Sector Function

- | | |
|----------|---|
| 1 | Download graphics (logo) Commands |
| 2 | Predefined (Canned) Messages |
| 3 | Two user-defined impact character sets |
| 4 | User-defined thermal character sets – four fixed matrix or 2 proportional |
| 5 | User Flash Memory |

The EEPROM stores microcode tolerances (MCT) values.

Model TI8 only

Model TI8 provides five functions with which you can store and define data. They are:

- User-defined thermal characters

- User-defined impact characters
- Logos
- Predefined messages
- User storage

This allows greater flexibility in allocating memory because you can allocate additional memory for one function that has not been used by another function.

There are twenty-two 64 KB sectors, for a total of 1.4 MB of flash memory available for allocation. The MCT value represents the number of 64 KB sectors assigned to the respective function. The amount of memory allocated to each function is specified by the value stored in its respective MCT location. For information about adjusting these values, see "Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading (Model TI8 only)" on page 122.

The user-defined thermal characters and user-defined impact characters are limited to one 64 KB sector each.

To change the memory allocation for any function, all memory partitions *must be erased*. If memory is not erased, an MCT write error status is returned. After the MCT values are written, the new ones take effect only after a reset. The new memory allocations begin with the lowest MCT address and increment up. Memory is allocated until all requests are satisfied or until all memory has been used.

Table 12. Memory allocation for Model TI8 functions

Function	Default memory allocation	MCT location
User-defined impact characters	64 KB	X'A0'
User-defined thermal characters	64 KB	X'A1'
Logos	64 KB	X'A2'
Predefined messages	64 KB	X'A3'
User memory	128 KB	X'A4'
Scan image storage	1 MB	X'A5'

Download graphics (logo) Commands

RS-232 Syntax:

GS * logo# n1 n2 data or X'1D;2A;logo#;n1;n2;data'

where:

- logo#** The logo number being stored.
- range = 1 to 40 for all models except TI8
 - range = 1 to 255 for Model TI8
- n1** One-eighth the number of dots in the horizontal direction (width = 8 × n1).
- range = 1 to 72 for a thermal logo.
range = 1 to 59 for an impact logo.
- n2** One-eighth the number of dots in the vertical direction (height = 8 × n2).

range = 1 to 255 for a thermal logo.

range = 1 to 5 for an impact logo.

data The data to form the graphics image. The number of data bytes for the image is $n1 \times n2 \times 8$

Purpose:

To store all-points-addressable print messages.

Remarks:

These messages can be positioned on the page using the commands for setting positions.

Decimal values are shown, but all parameter values (logo number, $n1$, $n2$) must be hex values when sent to the printer.

The dot density of these messages is specified when the message is printed. See "Print predefined graphics (logo) command" on page 154.

The total number of data bytes defined for all (up to 40) defined graphics messages must be less than 65 376.

If the parameters **logo#**, **$n1$** , or **$n2$** are out of range, the command is discarded and its remaining data is processed as print data.

This command should be sent only when the data buffer is empty. See the description of bit 6 in "Status byte 2" on page 166.

Images for the thermal logo commands will be defined by one-dot-high rows (horizontal slices), and the impact will be defined by eight-dot-high rows (vertical slices).

This command can be used to print signature captures at the printer.

1. Capture the signature as a bitmap.
2. Convert the bitmap to a series of graphics (logo) messages.
3. Hold the printer's buffer.
4. Send the graphics messages to the printer.
5. Release the printer's buffer.

Note: For a thermal graphic message that is 24 dots high, across the page ($n1 = 72$, $n2 = 3$) takes over 2000 bytes of data.

Example: n1 = 2 & n2 = 2

slice #	row #	Bit #	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	Data	bytes
0 (MSB)	7	7	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	1	2
1	6	6	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	3	4
2	5	5	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	5	6
3	4	4	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	7	8
4	3	3	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	9	10
5	2	2	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	11	12
6	1	1	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	13	14
7 (MSB)	0	0	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	15	16
8 (MSB)	7	7	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	17	18
9	6	6	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	19	20
10	5	5	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	21	22
11	4	4	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	23	24
12	3	3	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	25	26
13	2	2	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	27	28
14	1	1	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	29	30
15 (LSB)	0	0	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	31	32

Bit # → (MSB) 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 (LSB)

Data Byte → 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16

Data Byte → 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32

For Thermal Graphics - Defined as:

X'1D2A010202AAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
55555555555555555555555555555555'

For Impact Graphics - Defined as:

X'1D2A020202FF00FF00FF00FF00FF00FF00FF00
00FF00FF00FF00FF00FF00FF00FF00FF'

Error Conditions:

Flash EPROM load error - Verify the sector was erased before downloading images.

Memory sector is full - The sector can store up to 64 KB of graphics data, after which the sector is full.

Predefine messages

RS-232 Syntax:

GS : *message# data* GS : or X'1D3A;message#;data;1D3A'

where:

|	message#	The message number being stored.
|		range is 1 to 25 for all models except TI8
|		range is 1 to 255 for Model TI8
	data	All data and commands to be included in this message. No immediate commands can be included in the data.

Purpose:

To store predefined messages. This cuts transmission time. This is where you can store the header and the trailer of receipts, for example.

Remarks:

- After a "GS : " occurs, all incoming commands are stored in the message until another "GS : " occurs.

- “Print predefined graphics (logo) command” on page 154 can be included in this command.
- The size of all predefined messages cannot exceed 8000 bytes.

Example:

Store a trailer message:

X'1D3A01'

'Thank You For Shopping' X'0D'

' At RSD STORE' X'0D'

'Store #1234567' X'0D'

X'1D3A'

This would store this message as predefined message 1. See “Print predefined messages” on page 155 for printing this trailer message. Commands for selecting the print station and print characteristics must be included with the stored message.

Limitations:

- “Print predefined graphics (logo) command” on page 154 can be included in this command. Select and print a graphics command cannot be used. See “Print graphic messages” on page 152.
- “Print predefined messages” on page 155 can be included in this command, but can only be nested one message deep.

Example: Store a predefined message ('Jane Doe') at location 3, then issue the following commands:

1. X'1D3A06'
2. 'Welcome to Our Store' X'0D'
3. X'1D5E03' (This prints the message that has been stored at location 3. The message cannot have a X'1D5Exx' in it, because that would be more than one level of nesting.)
4. 'Is Your Cashier Today' X'0D'
5. X'1D3A'

Using the stored message and the above commands, the resulting text will be:

Welcome to Our Store
Jane Doe Is Your Cashier Today

- These commands **cannot** be included in the predefined message:
 - “Define document wait time” on page 138.
 - “Select character for reprinted lines” on page 139.
 - “Set sheet eject length” on page 135.
 - “Select and print a graphics (logo) command” on page 152.
- This command should be sent only when the data buffer is empty. See the description of bit 6 in “Status byte 2” on page 166.

Error Conditions:

Flash EPROM load error - Verify the sector was erased before downloading the messages.

Memory sector is full - This sector can store up 8 KB of message data. After that the sector is full.

Download user-defined characters

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC & *s n m data* or X'1B26;s;n;m;data'

where:

- s** The character set being defined.
- 1** User-defined thermal code page 1
 - 2** User-defined thermal code page 2
 - 3** User-defined thermal code page 3
 - 4** User-defined thermal code page 4
 - 5** User-defined impact code page 1
 - 6** User-defined impact code page 2
- n** The beginning ASCII address of the characters being defined.
- m** The ending ASCII address of the characters being defined.
- data** The slice data for the defined characters. Note the number of bytes is determined by which code page is being defined and the character matrix of that code page.

Purpose:

To define a matrix pattern for user-definable code pages stored in flash EPROM.

Remarks:

- After characters are downloaded to the printer, they remain valid until you redefine them. This is true even if power to the printer is removed.
- Before the characters are defined, the sector of the flash EPROM which stores this data must be erased. (See "Erase flash EPROM sector" on page 121.) Also, the character matrix for the code page must have already been defined. (See Table 13 on page 123, MCT# 3, 4, and 5.)
- Flash EPROM sector 4 contains all user-defined code pages for the thermal printhead. To redefine a code page, you must erase and reprogram all of them.
- Flash EPROM sector 3 contains both user-defined code pages for the impact printhead. To redefine a code page, you must erase and reprogram both of them.
- Thermal height must be even.
- There is no way to redefine one character only. You must redefine a whole code page.
- If the parameter **s**, **n**, or **m** is out of range, the command is discarded and the remaining data is processed as print data.
- This command should be sent only when the data buffer is empty. See the description of bit 6 in "Status byte 2" on page 166.
- ASCII characters 0 through 31 are reserved for RS-232 functions and cannot be defined.

Thermal code page

You define the character matrix for each code page with MCT #2, MCT #3, MCT #23, and MCT #24 for thermal code pages 1, 2, 3, and 4, respectively. See Table 13 on page 123.

The number of data bytes per character loaded is $2 \times \text{the character height}$. The total number of data bytes for this command is $2 \times \text{the character height} \times (1+m-n)$.

Example: 10 wide x 20 high

slice # row #	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	Data	bytes
1	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	1	2
2	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	3	4
3	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	5	6
4	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	7	8
5	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	9	10
6	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	11	12
7	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	13	14
8	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	15	16
9	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	17	18
10	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	19	20
11	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	21	22
12	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	23	24
13	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	25	26
14	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	27	28
15	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	29	30
16	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	31	32
17	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	33	34
18	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	35	36
19	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	37	38
20	X	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	X	39	40

Bit # → (MSB) 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 7 6 (LSB)

Defined as:

X'1B26014848 C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0FFC0FFC0F
C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0C0'

The above statement defines character X'48' as an 'H'.

Note: The number of data bytes = $2 \times \text{dot height (20)} = 40$ bytes.

Proportional font

This command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6.

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC & s n m data or X'1B;26;s;n;m;data'

where:

- s The character set being defined.
- 1 User-defined thermal code page 1.
- 3 User-defined thermal code page 3.
- n The beginning ASCII address of the characters being defined.
- m The ending ASCII address of the characters being defined.
- data The height and width of the character, and the matrix pattern for the data. The number of data bytes is $(m-n+1) \times (2+wb \times 32)$. wb is defined in the MCT command.

Purpose:

To download and print proportional fonts (True Type fonts) in the thermal

station. Each character in the code page has its own unique width and height. The matrix must be within the following ranges:

Width $8 \leq \text{width} \leq 32$

Height

 $8 \leq \text{width} \leq 32$

Remarks:

- Proportional and standard fonts may be used on the same line. If both types of fonts are used on a line, you would probably use proportional fonts for the description and resident fonts for the amounts.
- For alignment, a command that will allow right and left alignment on the same line may be used. This will allow the user to align a column (decimal point) on the right, and still be left-aligned. (See “Align positions” on page 137.)
- Once characters are downloaded to the printer, they remain valid until you redefine them. This is true even if power to the printer is removed.
- Before the characters are defined, the sector of the flash EPROM which stores this data must be erased. (See “Erase flash EPROM sector” on page 121.)
- There is no way to redefine one character only. You must redefine a whole code page.
- If the parameter **s**, **n**, or **m** is out of range, the command is discarded and the remaining data is processed as print data.
- This command should be sent only when the data buffer is empty. See the description of bit 6 in “Status byte 2” on page 166.
- ASCII characters 0 through 31 are reserved for RS-232 functions and cannot be defined.
- See Appendix E, “Proportional fonts,” on page 187 for suggestions about how to implement proportional fonts.

Limitations:

The memory required for proportional fonts is much greater than the memory that was required for user-defined fonts. Therefore, when code page 1 (or 3) is set up as proportional, code page 2 (or 4) is not valid.

You cannot set up code page 2 or code page 4 as a proportional font.

To download the font:

1. Store the code page matrix as an MCT value. Use the command X'1B 4D x 55 wb' where:

x	X'02' for thermal code page 1, X'17' for thermal code page 3
wb	The number of bytes, which is also 1/8 the number of dots, in the width of the widest character. The valid range is $2 \leq wb \leq 4$.
2. Erase the existing character set using the command X'1B 23 04'.
3. Use the Proportional Font command to download the font.

Example:

To define an A to code page 1 when *wb* is set to 02, enter the following:

X'1B260141410C16'
X'0F001F803FC070E06060C030C030C030C030C030C030'
X'C030FFF0FFF0C030C030C030C030C030C030C030'
X'C0300'

This command specifies a character width of 12 dots (X'0C') and a character height of 22 dots (X'16'). Following the width and height are 64 bytes that define the character. If, as in this case, the character is defined before all 64 bytes have been used, the rest of the bytes are filled with X'0' (see Figure 46).

Note: If *wb* were set to 03, then the total number of data bytes would be 98 (3×32+2)

		row #
00001111100000000	0F00	1
00011111110000000	1F80	2
00111111111000000	3FC0	3
01110000111000000	70E0	4
01100000011000000	6060	5
11000000001100000	C030	6
11000000001100000	C030	7
11000000001100000	C030	8
11000000001100000	C030	9
11000000001100000	C030	10
11000000001100000	C030	11
11000000001100000	C030	12
11111111111100000	FFF0	13
11111111111100000	FFF0	14
11000000001100000	C030	15
11000000001100000	C030	16
11000000001100000	C030	17
11000000001100000	C030	18
11000000001100000	C030	19
11000000001100000	C030	20
11000000001100000	C030	21
11000000001100000	C030	22
00000000000000000	0000	23
00000000000000000	0000	24
00000000000000000	0000	25
00000000000000000	0000	26
00000000000000000	0000	27
00000000000000000	0000	28
00000000000000000	0000	29
00000000000000000	0000	30
00000000000000000	0000	31
00000000000000000	0000	32

Figure 46. Proportional Font Example

Impact code page

You define the character matrix for each code page with MCT #4 for impact code page 1 and MCT #5 for impact code page 2. See Table 13 on page 123.

If the matrix defines the characters as 9 dots high or less, a print line will be printed in one pass of the printhead. When the matrix is defined as greater than 9 dots high, it takes two passes of the printhead per print line.

Landscape printing is limited to characters with a height of 9 dots or less. If user-defined characters are to be used in landscape print mode, they must be less than 10 dots high.

The number of data bytes per character loaded is $2 \times \text{character width}$. The total number of data bytes for this command is $2 \times \text{character width} \times (1+m-n)$. Each slice is defined with two bytes; the most significant bit (MSB) of each slice is the bottom of the character.

When defining wire patterns, the same wire does *not* fire in consecutive, primary (P) and secondary (S) positions. (The printer does not check for errors in defining the character.) If the character is defined with dots in consecutive positions only one of the dots is fired.)

Example: 11 half-dots wide (or 5.5 full dots) \times 9 high

slice # →	1		2		3		4		5		6
Bit # ↓	P	S	P	S	P	S	P	S	P	S	P
7 (MSB)	.	.	.	.	.	X	.	.	.	.	.
0 (LSB)	.	.	.	.	X	.	X	.	.	.	.
1	.	.	.	X	.	.	.	X	.	.	.
2	.	.	X	.	.	.	.	.	X	.	.
3	.	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	X	.
4	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X	.	X
5	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	X
6	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	X
7 (MSB)	X	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	X
Data Byte	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22
Data Byte	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21

Defined as:

X'1B26034141FO00080014000200110000081100020014000800F000'

The above statement defines character X'41' as an 'A'.

Note: The number of data bytes = $2 \times \text{dot width (11)} = 22$ bytes.

Error Conditions:

Flash EPROM load error - Verify the sector was erased before downloading images.

Flash storage write

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC ' n1 n2 data or X'1B;27;n1;n2;data'

where:

n1 = number of data bytes to store

n2 = 3-byte address where data bytes are to be stored

Error Conditions:

Flash EPROM load error - Verify the sector was erased before downloading images.

Remarks:

The valid address range for each SureMark depends on the model number and which memory option, if any, is installed. Use "Retrieve size of user flash storage" on page 157 to determine the valid range for your printer.

The command is rejected when the address is out of range.

The flash EPROM is guaranteed for a minimum life of 100,000 write/erase commands by the Flash manufacturer.

Erase flash EPROM sector

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC # *n* or X'1B;23;*n*'

where:

n

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 01 | downloaded graphics |
| 02 | predefined messages |
| 03 | user-defined impact character set |
| 04 | user-defined thermal character sets |
| 05 | flash storage |
| 06 - 07 | Reserved |
| 08 | check storage area |
| 09 - FF | Reserved |

Purpose:

To erase the flash EPROM before downloading the data into the printer.

Remarks:

The command should only be sent to the printer when the buffer is empty (status byte 2, bit 6). No other commands should be sent until this command is complete.

Status byte 3, bit 7 (command complete bit) is set to show erasing is finished and the command is complete.

The flash EPROM is guaranteed for a minimum life of 100,000 write/erase commands by the Flash manufacturer.

Send checksum of flash EPROM sector

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC " *n* or X'1B;22;*n*'

where:

n =

- | | |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| 01 | downloaded graphics |
| 02 | predefined messages |
| 03 | user-defined impact character set |
| 04 | user-defined thermal character sets |
| 05 | flash storage |
| 06 | Reserved |

Purpose:

To verify data integrity of the data loaded in the flash EPROM in the printer. A 2-byte checksum is returned.

Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC M *n h l* or X'1B;4D;n;h;l'

where:

- n** Microcode tolerance (MCT) that is being adjusted
- h** The high-order byte of MCT data
- l** The low-order byte of MCT data

Purpose:

The microcode tolerance (MCT) information is used to make adjustments to the printer's microcode. MCT data is nonvolatile data stored in the printer EPROM that is specific to a printer. For example, an MCT parameter can be defined to adjust for mechanical tolerances which cause a print line to not be centered on a receipt. Another would be for adjusting for the number of motor steps to the first print position on a document. This data remains intact until changed by the user.

Remarks:

Table 13 on page 123 lists the MCT values by the parameter (*n*). The table includes the default, the minimum, and the maximum values of each MCT.

If you try to set an MCT value out of its defined range, it is set to the closest limit (the minimum or maximum value) or rejected.

Error Conditions:

EPROM load error

Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading (Model T18 only)

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B;4D;n1;n2;h;l'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC M *n h l* or X'1B;4D;n1;n2;h;l'

where:

- n1** High-order address byte of Microcode tolerance (MCT) that is being adjusted
- n2** Low-order address byte of Microcode tolerance (MCT) that is being adjusted
- h** The high-order byte of MCT data
- l** The low-order byte of MCT data

Purpose:

- See "Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - loading."
- When *n1* = 0, extended command accesses the same location as the X'1b 4d n h l'.

Remarks:

- Available for Model T18 only.
- Table 13 on page 123 lists the MCT values by the parameter (*n*). The table includes the default, the minimum, and the maximum values of each MCT.

- If you try to set an MCT value out of its defined range, it is set to the closest limit (the minimum or maximum value) or rejected.

Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC S *n* or X'1B;53;*n*'

where:

n Microcode tolerance (MCT) information that is being requested

Purpose:

To enable reading MCT information from EEPROM.

Remarks:

- MCT data is sent over the serial line in status bytes 9 and 10. See Table 13 for the values of parameter *n*.
- MCT write command values that are out of range cause the command to be rejected. (See bit 7 of "Status byte 1" on page 166.)

Table 13. MCT command definitions

DEC	HEX	MCT	Default	Min	Max
2	2	Matrix of user-defined thermal code page 1 Byte 1: Dot row width Byte 2: Dot row height	X'0A14' (10x20)	X'0810'	X'1020' (16x32)
3	3	Matrix of user-defined thermal code page 2 Byte 1: Dot row width Byte 2: Dot row height	X'0A14' (10x20)	X'0810'	X'1020' (16x32)
4	4	Matrix of user-defined impact code page 1 Byte 1: Half-dot row width Byte 2: Dot row height	X'0707' (07x07)	X'0404'	X'1010' (16x16)
5	5	Matrix of user-defined impact code page 2 Byte 1: Half-dot row width Byte 2: Dot row height	X'0707' (07x07)	X'0404'	X'1010' (16x16)
6-22	6-16	Reserved - ATTENTION: Changing these values might damage the printer.			
23	17	Matrix of user-defined thermal code page 3 Byte 1: Dot row width Byte 2: Dot row height	X'0A14' (10x20)	X'0810'	X'1020' (16x32)
24	18	Matrix of user-defined thermal code page 4 Byte 1: Dot row width Byte 2: Dot row height	X'0A14' (10x20)	X'0810'	X'1020' (16x32)
25-29	19-1D	Reserved - ATTENTION: Changing these values might damage the printer.			

Table 13. MCT command definitions (continued)

DEC	HEX	MCT	Default	Min	Max
30	1E	Mode options Bit 13: (DI portrait mode only) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 = Line feeds NOT executed until DI ready. (Epson mode) 0 = Line feeds are executed without regard for the state of DI ready. (IBM mode) Bit 14: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 = Normal operations (IBM mode) 0 = Switch order of font A and font B (Epson mode) Bit 15: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = Disable CR (X'0D') in CR station. No line feeds in DI. (Epson mode) 1 = Normal operations. Treat CR (X'0D') the same as line feeds (X'0A'). (IBM mode) 	X'FFFF'	N/A	N/A
31–53	1F–35	Reserved – IMPORTANT: Changing these values might damage the printer.			
54	36	T18 only: Reserved – IMPORTANT: Changing these values might damage the printer.			
		T13, T14, T15, T16, and T17: Bits 9–15: Reserved for future use Bit 8: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 = Function disabled 0 = DBCS page mode, underline moved up two dot rows Bits 2–7: Reserved for future use Bit 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 = Function disabled 0 = CR; paper is cut when button is pressed for at least 120 motor steps Bit 0: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 = No mapping of user flash storage 0 = Map user flash storage to logo space 	X'FFFF'	X'0000'	X'FFFF'
55–159	37–9F	Reserved – IMPORTANT: Changing these values might damage the printer.			
160	A0	User-defined impact character memory allocation	X'0001'	X'0000'	X'FFFF'

Table 13. MCT command definitions (continued)

DEC	HEX	MCT	Default	Min	Max
161	A1	User-defined thermal character memory allocation	X'0001'	X'0000'	X'FFFF'
162	A2	User-defined Logos	X'0001'	X'0000'	X'FFFF'
163	A3	Predefined messages memory allocation	X'0001'	X'0000'	X'FFFF'
164	A4	User flash storage memory allocation	X'0002'	X'0000'	X'FFFF'
165	A5	Scan image storage memory allocation	X'0010'	X'0000'	X'FFFF'
166–175	A6–AF	Reserved			
176	B0	Scan storage template #1 predefined location X0			
177	B1	Scan storage template #1 predefined location Y0			
178	B2	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DX0			
179	B3	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DY0			
180	B4	Scan storage template #1 predefined location X1			
181	B5	Scan storage template #1 predefined location Y1			
182	B6	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DX1			
183	B7	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DY1			
184	B8	Scan storage template #1 predefined location X2			
185	B9	Scan storage template #1 predefined location Y2			
186	BA	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DX2			
187	BB	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DY2			
188	BC	Scan storage template #1 predefined location X3			
189	BD	Scan storage template #1 predefined location Y3			
190	BE	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DX3			
191	BF	Scan storage template #1 predefined location DY3			
192	C0	Scan storage template #2 predefined location X0			
193	C1	Scan storage template #2 predefined location Y0			
194	C2	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DX0			

Table 13. MCT command definitions (continued)

DEC	HEX	MCT	Default	Min	Max
195	C3	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DY0			
196	C4	Scan storage template #2 predefined location X1			
197	C5	Scan storage template #2 predefined location Y1			
198	C6	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DX1			
199	C7	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DY1			
200	C8	Scan storage template #2 predefined location X2			
201	C9	Scan storage template #2 predefined location Y2			
202	CA	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DX2			
203	CB	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DY2			
204	CC	Scan storage template #2 predefined location X3			
205	CD	Scan storage template #2 predefined location Y3			
206	CE	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DX3			
207	CF	Scan storage template #2 predefined location DY3			

Extended Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request (Model TI8 only)

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1D 4E n1 n2'

RS-232 Syntax:

GS N n1 n2 or X'1D; 4E n1 n2'

where:

n1 High order address byte of MCT information that is being requested

n2 Low order address byte of MCT information that is being requested

Purpose:

To enable reading MCT information from EEPROM.

Remarks:

- Only supported on Model TI8 printers.
- MCT data is sent over the serial line in status bytes 9 and 10. See Table 13 on page 123 for the values of parameter *n*.
- See “Microcode tolerance (MCT) information - request” on page 123.

Setup commands

Setup commands change character font, inter-character spacing, and the target print station.

Set print mode

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC ! *n* or X'1B;21;*n*'

where:

n Specifies print characteristics, such as user-defined thermal and impact code pages.

Bit # ↓	Function	Bit=0	Bit=1	Thermal	Impact
LSB 0	Char/Page 0	See Below	See Below	yes	yes
1	Char/Page 1	See Below	See Below	yes	yes
2	Overline	Cancel	Set	yes	no
3	Emphasized	Cancel	Set	yes	yes
4	Double-high	Cancel	Set	yes	yes
5	Double-wide	Cancel	Set	yes	yes
6	Inverted Mode	Cancel	Set	yes	no
MSB 7	Underlined	Cancel	Set	yes	no

Table 14. Fonts for Models T13, T14, TG3, TG4, T18, TF6, and TM6

Bit 0	Bit 1	User-Defined Thermal Code Page	User-Defined Impact Code Page @ Density	Resident Thermal	Resident Impact
0	0	Code Page 1	Code Page 1 @ 150 half-dots per inch	Font A	Font A
1	0	Code Page 2	Code Page 1 @ 120 half-dots per inch	Font B	Font B
0	1	Code Page 3	Code Page 2 @ 150 half-dots per inch	Font C	Font A
1	1	Code Page 4	Code Page 2 @ 120 half-dots per inch	Reserved	Font B

Table 15. Fonts for Models T11 and T12

Bit 0	Bit 1	User-Defined Thermal Code Page	User-Defined Impact Code Page @ Density	Resident Thermal	Resident Impact
0	0	Code Page 1	Code Page 1 @ 150 half-dots per inch	Font A	Font A
1	0	Code Page 2	Code Page 1 @ 120 half-dots per inch	Font B	Font B
0	1	Code Page 3	Code Page 2 @ 150 half-dots per inch	Font A	Font A
1	1	Code Page 4	Code Page 2 @ 120 half-dots per inch	Font B	Font B

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

- For thermal printing with resident character sets:
 Font A = 10-dots (wide) × 20 dots (high) or 1.25 mm × 2.5 mm
 Font B = 12-dots (wide) × 24 dots (high) or 1.5 mm × 3.0 mm
 Font C = 8 dots (wide) × 16 dots (high) or 1.0 mm × 2.0 mm
 Font C, starting with level 38 micro code = 8-dots (wide) × 20 dots (high) or 1.0 mm × 2.5 mm
- For impact printing:
 Font A = dot density of 150 half-dots per inch (resident characters = 1.2 mm × 2.5 mm).
 Font B = dot density of 120 half-dots per inch (resident characters = 1.5 mm × 2.5 mm).
 Emphasized printing enable and disable, and font A or font B selection must be at the beginning of a print line to be recognized.
 User-defined characters greater than 9 dots high cannot be printed double high in landscape mode or in the portrait mode of Models TI1 and TI2.
 Double-high and emphasized characters are not valid in landscape mode.
- Invert cannot be used with overline or underline.
- See “Character fonts” on page 94, “Download user-defined characters” on page 116, “Set print station” on page 131, and “Select user-defined or resident character sets” on page 131 for related information.

Example:

Print mode set to font B, emphasized and underlined enabled (n = 89 hex).

Set or cancel double-wide mode**RS-232 Syntax:**

ESC W n or X'1B;57;n'

where:

n=00 Cancel double-wide mode

n=01 Set double-wide mode

Default:

n = 00

Set or cancel double-high mode**RS-232 Syntax:**

ESC h n or X'1B;68;n'

where:

n=00 Cancel double-high mode

n=01 Set double-high mode

Default:

n = 00

Purpose:

For better print quality with double-high characters in the document station.

Remarks:

See "Set or cancel unidirectional printing" on page 130.

Set or cancel underline mode

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC – *n* or X'1B;2D;*n*'

where:

n=00 Cancel underline mode

n=01 Set underline mode

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

This is valid in the customer receipt station only.

Set or cancel overline mode

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC x'5F' *n* or X'1B;5F;*n*'

where:

n=00 Cancel overline mode

n=01 Set overline mode

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

This is valid in the customer receipt station only.

Set or cancel invert mode

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC H *n* or X'1B;48;*n*'

where:

n=00 Cancel Invert Mode

n=01 Set Invert Mode

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

This is valid in the customer receipt station only.

Set or cancel emphasized printing

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC G *n* or X'1B;47;*n*'

where:

n=00 Cancel Emphasized Mode

n=01 Set Emphasized Mode

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

This must be at the beginning of a print-line in the document portrait station.
It is enabled for the entire line.

Set or cancel high-quality print mode

This command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6.

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B;2F;n'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC n or X'1B;2F;n'

where:

n=00 Cancel high-quality mode

n=01 Set high-quality mode

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

When high-quality mode is set, the printing will slow down to one-half speed in the cash receipt station. The slower speed increases the quality of the printing.

Set or cancel unidirectional printing

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC U n or X'1B55;n'

where:

n=00 Cancels unidirectional printing

n=01 Sets unidirectional printing

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

This is valid in the document station in portrait mode only, when there must be two passes of the printhead to print one print line.

Example: double-high or emphasized print.

When unidirectional mode is set to double-high characters, it takes three passes of the printhead.

In bidirectional mode, printing double-high characters takes only two passes of the printhead.

Unidirectional printing takes longer but increases the quality of the print.

Set print station

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC c 0 *n* or X'1B;6330;*n*'

where:

n Specifies the print station.

Bit # ↓ Station

LSB 0 Reserved

1 Customer Receipt Station

2 Document Station - Portrait Mode

3 Document Station - Landscape Mode

4 Reserved

5 Reserved

6 Reserved

7 Reserved

Default:

n = 02

Remarks:

See “Document handling” on page 163.

Only one station can be set at a time. If you select more than one station, the command is ignored.

Select user-defined or resident character sets

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC % *n* or X'1B;25;*n*'

where:

n=00 Select resident character sets

n=01 Select user-defined character sets

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

See “Character fonts” on page 94 and “Download user-defined characters” on page 116.

Set code page

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC t *n* or X'1B;74;*n*'

where:

n=00 Code Page 437 - United States

n=01 Code Page 858 - Multilingual

n=02 Code Page 863 - Canadian-French

n=03 Code Page 860 - Portugal

n=04 Code Page 865 - Norway

n=05 Printer's Generic Code Page

Default:

n = 01

Remarks:

Changing code pages is valid for resident character sets only. If user-defined character sets are enabled, this command will not do anything.

Set inter-character spacing

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC SP *n* or X'1B20;*n*'

where:

n The number of dot-spaces in the thermal print station or half-dot spaces in the impact print station.

Default:

n = 03

Maximum:

n = 08

Remarks:

If you select double-width printing, the space to the right of each character is doubled.

Set or cancel rotated characters

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC V *n* or X'1B56;*n*'

where:

n=00 Cancel Rotated Characters
n=01 Set Rotated Character
n=02 Code Page 863 - Canadian-French

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

Rotation is 90 degrees clockwise. This command is supported only in the thermal print station.

Set print station parameters

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC c 1 *n* or X'1B6331;*n*'

where:

n Specifies the print station.

Bit # ↓ Station

LSB 0 Reserved

1 Customer Receipt Station

2 Document Station - Portrait Mode

3 Document Station - Landscape Mode

4 Reserved

5 Reserved

6 Reserved

7 Reserved

Purpose:

This command is used for setting the line spacing, margins, and tabs.

Remarks:

More than one station can be selected at the same time if the settings are common to all of the selected stations.

Default:

n = 02 (customer receipt station)

Select 1/8-inch line spacing

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 1 or X'1B31'

Remarks:

In the thermal (receipt) station this would set line feeding to 25 steps/line.

In the impact (document - portrait) station this would be set to 6 steps/line.

Note: Spacing in the document-portrait is actually 8.5 lines per inch. Line spacing dimension is approximate. For the impact printer in portrait mode, the actual line spacing must be calculated using 51 steps per inch.

In the impact (document - landscape) station this would be set to 16 steps/line.

This command should be sent after "Set print station parameters."

Select 1/6-inch line spacing

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 2 or X'1B32'

Remarks:

In the thermal (receipt) station this would set line feeding to 34 steps/line.

In the impact (document - portrait) station this would be set to 8 steps/line.

Note: Spacing in the document-portrait is actually 6.375 lines per inch. Line spacing dimension is approximate. For the impact printer in portrait mode, the actual line spacing must be calculated using 51 steps per inch.

In the impact (document - landscape) station this would be set to 21 steps/line.

This command should be sent after “Set print station parameters” on page 133.

Select color printing

This command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6.

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC r *n* or X'1B;72;*n*;

where:

n =

- | | |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| 00 | Cancel color printing |
| 01 | Enable full-character color printing |
| 02 | Enable half-character color printing |

Default:

n = 00

Purpose:

To enable half-character or full-character color printing, or to disable color printing.

Remarks:

- You can enable and disable full-character color printing within a print line. This enables you to print one word in a different color.
- This command can be used up to 8 times in a line when full-character color printing is used.
- Half-character color printing is only supported at the beginning of a print line.
- If both bit 1 and bit 0 of *n* are set (*n*=03), only half-character color printing will be enabled.

Limitations:

- This command is only valid if the Enable Color Printing command (see “Select thermal paper” on page 144) is sent first.
- When color paper is enabled, depending on the paper, the printer might be limited to printing at 15 lps when printing 8 lpi.

Set line spacing using minimum units

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 3 *n* or X'1B33;*n*;

where:

n Specifies line feed steps.

In the customer receipt station, 1 inch = 204 steps and 1mm = 8 steps. Thermal must be an even number.

In the document portrait station, 1 inch = 51 steps and 1 mm = 2 steps.

In the document landscape station, 1 inch = 127 steps and 1 mm = 5 steps.

This command should be sent after "Set print station parameters" on page 133.

Set sheet eject length

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC C *n* or X'1B43;*n*'

where:

n Specifies the number of line feed steps using minimum units moved when a *FF* is sent in the receipt station.

In the document station, an eject will feed until the document has exited the lower document sensors - this length is not used.

Default:

n = A0 (160 decimal)

Maximum:

255 steps (FF hex)

This value is stored in the EEPROM in the printer so that it is not lost when the printer is reset.

Set horizontal tab positions

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC D [*n1 n2*] NUL NUL or X'1B44[*n1n2*]0000'

where:

n1 The high-order-byte dot offset for the horizontal tab.

n2 The low-order-byte dot offset for the horizontal tab.

Default:

There is a tab every 100 dots.

Remarks:

This command should be sent after "Set print station parameters" on page 133.

Up to 5 tab positions can be stored. All 5 *n1 n2* value pairs can be included in one command. Values must be entered in hex.

A tab is calculated from the left margin position.

Tab values must be in ascending order.

Example: To set 3 tab positions - at the 100, 150 and 300 dot positions:

- X'1B4400640096012C0000'

See "Tab to next tab stop" on page 155.

Set left margin position

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC \$ *n1 n2* or X'1B24;*n1;n2*'

where:

- n1** The high-order byte of the dot offset from the beginning of the print line.
- n2** The low-order byte of the dot offset from the beginning of the print line.

Default:

n1 = 0, *n2* = 0

Remarks:

In the customer receipt station, 1 mm = 8 dots.

In the document station, 1 inch = 150 half-dots (75 dots).

n1 and *n2* are hex values. Convert each to decimal. Then, use this formula to get the decimal equivalent: $(n1 \times 256) + n2$.

If the number exceeds the printable area, it is ignored.

The maximum value for the customer receipt station is 576. The maximum value for the document insert station is 474.

In the customer receipt station, this number is rounded back to a factor of 8.

This command should be sent after "Set print station parameters" on page 133.

Set relative position

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC <5C>h *n1 n2* or X'1B5C;*n1;n2*'

where:

- n1** The high-order byte of the dot offset from the left margin.
- n2** The low-order byte of the dot offset from the left margin.

Default:

n1 = 0, *n2* = 0

Remarks:

In the thermal station, 1 mm = 8 dots.

In the impact station, 1 in. = 75-dots (150 half-dots).

n1 and *n2* are hex values. Convert each to decimal, then use this formula to get the decimal equivalent: $(n2 \times 256) + n1$

To move the position to the left, use a negative number.

Example: *To move N dots to the right* $\Rightarrow 65536 - N$.

If this number plus the left margin exceeds the printable area it is ignored.

See "Set left margin position."

In the customer receipt station, this number is rounded back to a factor of 8.

Align positions

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC a *n* or X'1B61;*n*'

where:

n	The type of alignment.
00	Align Left
01	Align Center
02	Align Right
04	Align Column Right

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

- Values 00, 01, and 02 are only valid at the beginning of a line.
- Tabs are only valid when printing is aligned to the left. If tabs are used when left alignment is not used, results can be unpredictable. (See "Tab to next tab stop" on page 155.)
- Alignment is relative to the left margin.
- To use the Align Column Right command:
 1. Send the characters that you want to be left aligned.
 2. Send the Align Column Right command.
 3. Send the characters that you want to be right aligned.
 4. Send an end of line command, for example X'0A' or X'0D'.

The printer will return to left aligned after the line is printed.

Limitations for *n*=04:

- The command is only valid in the cash receipt station.
- This command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6.
- The command is ignored if the printer is not left aligned when the command is received.
- If the Align Column Right command is received but the line is filled before an EOL is received, the filled line is treated as an EOL. There are usually a few dot positions available, but not enough for a full character. The column alignment will occur on the few dot positions available.

Set error recovery function

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC c 4 *n* or X'1B63;34;*n*'

where:

n Selects the function.

Bit # ↓	Function	Bit=0	Bit=1
LSB 0	Reserved	N/A	N/A
1	Reserved	N/A	N/A
2	Release Print Buffer after Error Correction	Release	Hold
32	Automatic retry on a Home Error	Enabled	Not Enabled
4	Hold buffer when waiting for a document	Release	Hold
5	Hold buffer after a flip error	Release	Hold

Default:

n = 00

Remarks:

When set to **not** automatically release the print buffer after error correction (bit #2), the printer does not execute commands until it receives a "Real-time requests" on page 161 command to cancel or release the print buffer.

When automatic retry on a home error is selected, the printer will try to reset the printhead to a known location, then reprint the line on which the error occurred. If the printer is unable to reset the printhead, operator intervention is needed.

An error will be sent back to the system and the LED will blink.

Define document wait time

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC f x y or X'1B66;x;y'

where:

- x** Time the printer should wait, from receiving a print line for the document station until the document is inserted.
- If the document has not been detected by the time the wait time ends, a document error is sent to the system. The system continues to wait for a document to be inserted.
- Wait Time = x * 0.5 seconds
- y** Delay from the time the document is detected until it is *grabbed* by the printer (start of document printing):
- Side insertion - closes the document throat.
 - Front insertion - pulls the document into the printer and feeds it to its top of form.
- Delay = y × 0.1 seconds

Defaults:

x = 02 y = 03

Remarks:

If y = 0, the printer does not grab the document. The operator must use the document feed button to pull the document into the printer.

If x = 0, the printer **never** sends error status if no print data is sent to the document station.

This value is stored in the EEPROM in the printer so that it is not lost when the printer is reset.

Status sent to system

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC) *n* or X'1B29;*n*'

where:

n Select function.

Bit # ↓	Function	Bit=0	Bit=1
LSB 0	Print Buffer Empty/Full	Yes	No
1	Reserved	Yes	No
2	Front Document Sensor Change	Yes	No
3	Top Document Sensor Change	Yes	No
4	After status byte 6 is incremented or status byte 3, bit 7, is set	Yes	No
5	Cash Draw Sensor Change	Yes	No
6	Key In Use	Yes	No
7	Cover Open	Yes	No

Remarks:

Bit 4 can be used in place of the Command Complete. When the buffer is empty, the system can assume that everything stored in the printer has been completed. To enable these status messages, unsolicited status must be enabled. See "Asynchronous (real-time) commands" on page 161.

Select character for reprinted lines

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC + *n* or X'1B2B;*n*'

where:

n The ASCII representation of the character printed in the first character position on the print line when recovering from a home error. This occurs in impact print stations only.

Default:

n = 2A hex (This is an asterisk (*) in most code pages.)

Remarks:

The value is stored in EEPROM to prevent loss when the printer is reset. The default value after the reset is the value last sent.

Reinitialize the printer

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC @ or X'1B40'

Purpose:

Reinitialize all printer setting to their default values and reset the impact printhead.

Remarks:

Commands in the print buffer are **not** lost when this command is issued. The settings that are reinitialized follow (all numbers are in hex):

Setting	Default Value
Print Mode	00
Print Station Selected	02
User-Defined/Resident Character Sets	00
Code Page	01
Intercharacter Spacing (SB)	03
Rotated Characters	00
Station for line spacing	02
Line Spacing all stations	Six LPI
Tab Positions	every 100 dots
Left Margin	00
Relative Position	00
Align Positions	00
Unidirectional printing	00
Horizontal Size of Bar Code	03
Vertical Size of Bar Code	A2
Position of HR	00
Font for HRI	00

Error Conditions:

None

Enable or disable the feed buttons (Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4 only)**RS-485 Syntax:**

X'1B;63;35;n'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC c 5 n or X'1B;63;35;n'

where:**n=0** Enables feed buttons**n=1** Disables feed buttons**Default:**

n = 0

Purpose:

To disable the feed buttons while in the middle of a transaction.

Remarks:

If the printer is set to have the buttons disabled, the offline tests will also be disabled. Supported on all models except TI1 and TI2.

Enable or disable the beeper (Models TF6 and TM6 only)

This command is supported only for Models TF6 and TM6.

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC BEL *n1 n2* or X'1B 07 *n1 n2*'

where:

n1 Enables or disables beeper.

X'00' Disable beeper.

X'01'–X'FE'

Timed enable beeper.

X'FF' Enable beeper.

n2 Sets the beeper volume and tone.

Bits 0–3

The note. Bit 0 is the LSB.

Bits 4–5

The octave.

Bit 6 Reserved.

Bit 7 Volume. 0 = loud, 1 = soft.

Value (Bits 0–3)	Note	Value (Bits 0–3)	Note	Value (Bits 4–5)	Octave
0000 – 0	C	1000 – 8	G#	00 – 0	1
0001 – 1	C#	1001 – 9	A	01 – 1	2
0010 – 2	D	1010 – A	A#	10 – 2	3
0011 – 3	D#	1011 – B	B	11 – 3	4
0100 – 4	E	1100 – C	Rest / Silence		
0101 – 5	F	1101 – D	Reserved		
0110 – 6	F#	1110 – E	Reserved		
0111 – 7	G	1111 – F	1 KHz (normal beep)		

Default:

n = X'00'

Purpose:

To enable or disable the beeper.

Remarks:

- Any value other than X'00' or X'FF' is treated as an amount of time that the beeper is to be enabled. The time is calculated as *n1*×0.1 seconds.
- To stop a beep command early, send the Disable Beeper command.
- Timed beeps can be chained together. They can also be downloaded as canned messages.
- A value of *n2*=X'2F' is recommended for the most audible tone.
- Set bits 0–3 to 1100 to put a timed silence in a beep sequence.

Enable or disable upside-down printing

This command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6.

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC { *n* or X'1B 7B *n*'

where:

n Enables or disables upside-down printing.

X'00' Disable upside-down printing.

X'01' Enable upside-down printing.

Default:

n = 00

Purpose:

When the printer is wall-mounted, the front of the printer points up. Therefore, the print data appears upside down when data is printed normally. This command allows the data to be right-side up as it comes out of the printer.

Remarks:

- When upside-down printing is enabled, the last line of data must be sent to the print first.
- This command is valid only at the beginning of a print line.

Select character size for scalable fonts

This command is valid only for single-station SureMark Models TF6 and TM6, and the thermal print station on Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4.

RS-232 Syntax:

GS ! *n* or X'1D;21;*n*'

where:

n Defines the height and width of a character. The four least significant bits (LSBs) specify the height and the four most significant bits (MSBs) specify the width of the character. See Table 16.

For example, if *n*=X'14' the scaled character will be twice the defined width and five times the defined height.

Table 16. Width and height for scalable fonts

Four MSBs (in hex)	Character Width	Four LSBs (in hex)	Character Height
0	As defined	0	As defined
1	2 × defined width	1	2 × defined height
2	3 × defined width	2	3 × defined height
3	4 × defined width	3	4 × defined height
4	5 × defined width	4	5 × defined height
5	6 × defined width	5	6 × defined height
6	7 × defined width	6	7 × defined height
7	8 × defined width	7	8 × defined height

Default:

$n = 00$

Purpose:

To select the size of a character.

Remarks:

- This command is valid only in the thermal print station.
- Bits 3 and 8 of n are ignored.
- The *Set Print Mode* command (see “Set print mode” on page 127) can also select the character height (double high and double wide). The last command that is received is the effective command.
- Underline and overline is not supported when the height is scaled 8x except on the TI8.
- The bar for overline and underline is not magnified in thickness except on the TI8.

Fix font matrix

This command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6 and TM6.

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC : n or X'1B 3A n '

where:

n The character width to which all proportional characters will be adjusted. The range of valid values is $8 \leq n \leq 32$. Use X'00' to disable this command and print proportional characters normally.

Default:

$n = 00$

Purpose:

To fix the matrix of proportional fonts. This command will be used mostly to align numbers and decimal points.

Remarks:

- This command is valid only on proportional user-defined fonts.
- If the character is larger than the width defined by this command, then the right side of the character will be truncated.
- If the character is smaller than the width defined by this command, then the character will be centered in the space.

Print logo inline

This command is supported for Model TM6 and the thermal station of Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4.

RS-232 Syntax:

GS J d $n1$ $n2$ data or X'1D 4A d $n1$ $n2$ data'

where:

d Relative height of the character.
0 Single high
1 Double high
 $n1$ MSB of the logo width.

n2 LSB of the logo width.

data The data to form the graphics image.

Purpose:

To print a small logo inline with characters.

Remarks:

- Thermal station only
- Rotate characters must be disabled
- *n1* and *n2* indicate the number of dots of the bit image in the horizontal direction. The number of dots is calculated as $n1 \times 256 + n2$ (after first converting *n1* and *n2* to decimal).
- The logo is 24 dot rows high. If printed in double-high mode, the logo will be 48 rows high.
- The number of data bytes to form the image is figured by $\{((n1 \times 256 + n2) - 1) / 8 + 1\} \times 24$.
- Like user-defined characters, if the image is only 14 dots wide, the last two dots should be zero to complete the byte. When printed, the image will be only 14 dots wide.

| Select thermal paper

This command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6.

RS-232 Syntax:

GS ; *n* or X'1D 3B *n*'

where:

n

X'0' Disable two-color printing.

X'1' Enable color printing using print parameter set 1.

X'2' Enable color printing using print parameter set 2.

X'3' Enable color printing using print parameter set 2.

X'4'–X'FF'

Select the print parameters to be defined.

Purpose:

To enable two-color printing and select the print parameters that are best suited for the paper selected.

Remarks:

- New parameters will be defined as new color papers become available.
- The speed of printing will change depending on the print parameters. When print parameter set 1 is used, the print speed will be 15 lines per second.
- This command setting is saved in nonvolatile memory.

Bar code commands

Bar code commands are valid in the thermal print station only.

Print bar code

RS-232 Syntax:

GS k n NUL or X'1D6B;n;data'

where:

n	Bar Code
00	UPC-A
01	UPC-E
02	JAN13 (EAN-13)
03	JAN8 (EAN-8)
04	CODE 39
05	ITF
06	CODABAR
07	CODE 128C
08	CODE 93
09	CODE 128A, 128B, and 128C (this command is supported only for Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4, TF6, and TM6)

data For $n=00$ through $n=08$, the ASCII representation of the characters to be printed.

For $n=09$, the hexadecimal representation of the characters to be printed. The first byte of data must be the byte-count of the remaining data. The trailing X'00' should not be included for this command.

$n=09$ is only supported on Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TI5, TG3, TG4, TG5, and single station thermal.

Remarks:

- Valid at the beginning of a line only.
- This command will increment status byte 6.
- Printing will not start until X'00' is received, or the end of a data packet in RS-485.
- Data after any invalid character for a particular bar code will be discarded. The printer will continue to wait for X'00'.
- If X'00' or an invalid character is received before the required number of data bytes, zeros will be inserted following the data until the required number is reached (for UPC-A, UPC-E, JAN13, and JAN8).
- Excess characters will be discarded.
- A check digit will be generated if one is not supplied for UPC-A, JAN13, and JAN8.
- Check digits will be figured and added for Code 128C and Code 93.
- Models TI1 and TI2 support only Code 128C ($n=07$). They do not support codes 128A and 128B ($n=09$).
- For UPC-E, the printer will expand the data, generate a check digit and parse the data before generating the bar code (6 or 7 digits are executed). If 7 digits are received and digit 1 is 0, the last 6 digits are used.
If digit 1 is not 0, digit 1 is used and the digit 7 is ignored.

- For CODABAR, a stop and start character is required.
- A leading zero will be added to the data for ITF bar codes if the data received has an odd number of bytes.
- If a bar code width is greater than the paper width, the right of the bar code is truncated, making the bar code unreadable.
- Barcodes will always be printed in black, regardless of color printing settings.

Table 17. Code 128 character set

Value		Code			Value		Code		
Decimal	Hex	Set A	Set B	Set C	Decimal	Hex	Set A	Set B	Set C
0	0	SP	SP	00	55	37	W	W	55
1	1	!	!	01	56	38	X	X	56
2	2	“	“	02	57	39	Y	Y	57
3	3	#	#	03	58	3A	Z	Z	58
4	4	\$	\$	04	59	3B	[	[	59
5	5	%	%	05	60	3C	\	\	60
6	6	&	&	06	61	3D	]	]	61
7	7	‘	‘	07	62	3E	^	^	62
8	8	(	(	08	63	3F	_	_	63
9	9	)	)	09	64	40	MUL	‘	64
10	A	*	*	10	65	41	SOH	a	65
11	B	+	+	11	66	42	STX	b	66
12	C	‘	‘	12	67	43	ETX	c	67
13	D	–	–	13	68	44	EOT	d	68
14	E	.	.	14	69	45	ENO	e	69
15	F	/	/	15	70	46	ACK	f	70
16	10	0	0	16	71	47	BEL	g	71
17	11	1	1	17	72	48	BS	h	72
18	12	2	2	18	73	49	HT	i	73
19	13	3	3	19	74	4A	LF	j	74
20	14	4	4	20	75	4B	VT	k	75
21	15	5	5	21	76	4C	FF	l	76
22	16	6	6	22	77	4D	CR	m	77
23	17	7	7	23	78	4E	SO	n	78
24	18	8	8	24	79	4F	SI	o	79
25	19	9	9	25	80	50	DLE	p	80
26	1A	:	:	26	81	51	DC1	q	81
27	1B	;	;	27	82	52	DC2	r	82
28	1C	<	<	28	83	53	DC3	s	83
29	1D	=	=	29	84	54	DC4	t	84
30	1E	>	>	30	85	55	NAK	u	85
31	1F	?	?	31	86	56	SYN	v	86
32	20	@	@	32	87	57	ETB	w	87

Table 17. Code 128 character set (continued)

Value		Code				Value		Code		
Decimal	Hex	Set A	Set B	Set C		Decimal	Hex	Set A	Set B	Set C
33	21	A	A	33		88	58	CAN	x	88
34	22	B	B	34		89	59	EM	y	89
35	23	C	C	35		90	5A	SUB	z	90
36	24	D	D	36		91	5B	ESC	{	91
37	25	E	E	37		92	5C	FS	|	92
38	26	F	F	38		93	5D	GS	}	93
39	27	G	G	39		94	5E	RS	~	94
40	28	H	H	40		95	5F	US	DEL	95
41	29	I	I	41		96	60	FNC3	FNC3	96
42	2A	J	J	42		97	61	FNC2	FNC2	97
43	2B	K	K	43		98	62	SHIFT	SHIFT	98
44	2C	L	L	44		99	63	CODE C	CODE C	99
45	2D	M	M	45		100	64	CODE B	FNC4	CODE B
46	2E	N	N	46		101	65	FNC4	CODE A	CODE A
47	2F	O	O	47		102	66	FNC1	FNC1	FNC1
48	30	P	P	48		103	67	START CODE A		
49	31	Q	Q	49		104	68	START CODE B		
50	32	R	R	50		105	69	START CODE C		
51	33	S	S	51						
52	34	T	T	52						
53	35	U	U	53						
54	36	V	V	54						

Print bar code examples

UPC-A

Command = 1D 6B
n = 00
Data = 30 33 31 33 32 33 31 32 30 37 38 (hex)

UPC-E

Command = 1D 6B
n = 01
Data = 34 39 30 36 39 30 00 (hex)

JAN13 (EAN-13)

Command = 1D 6B
n = 02
Data = 34 39 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 30 00 (hex)

JAN8 (EAN-8)

Command = 1D 6B
n = 03
Data = 34 39 31 32 33 34 35 36 00 (hex)

CODE 39

Command = 1D 6B
n = 04
Data = 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 00 (hex)

ITF

Command = 1D 6B
 n = 05
 Data = 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 30 31 32 00 (hex)

CODABAR

Command = 1D 6B
 n = 06
 Data = 42 39 30 2E 2B 3A 2F 24 2D 43 00 (hex)

CODE 128C

Command = 1D 6B
 n = 07
 Data = 35 34 35 35 35 36 35 37 35 38 35 39 00 (hex)

CODE 93

Command = 1D 6B
 n = 08
 Data = 31 32 33 34 35 36 00 (hex)

Reserved

09 - FF

Select horizontal size of bar code**RS-232 Syntax:**

GS w *n* or X'1D77;n'

where:

n The horizontal magnification of the line width in the bar code, ($2 \leq n \leq 4$).

Default:

n = 03

Note: The last valid value is kept when an invalid value is sent.

Select bar code height**RS-232 Syntax:**

GS h *n* or X'1D68;n'

where:

n The dot height of the bar code, ($1 \leq n \leq 255$).

Default:

n = X'A2' (162 decimal)

Select printing position of human readable information (HRI)**RS-232 Syntax:**

GS H *n* or X'1D48;n'

where:

n The print position:

00 Not Printed

01 Above the bar code

02 Below the bar code

03 Both above and below the bar code.

Default:

$n = 00$

Remarks:

Human readable information is normal text associated with the bar code.

Note: The last valid value is kept when an invalid value is sent.

Select font for HRI

RS-232 Syntax:

GS f n or X'1D66; n '

where:

n	The font for the HRI
00	Font A
01	Font B

Default:

$n = 00$

Remarks:

Only resident character sets are used:

- Font A = 10-dots (W) × 20 dots (H) or 1.25 mm × 2.5 mm
- Font B = 12-dots (W) × 24 dots (H) or 1.5 mm × 3.0 mm

Note: The last valid value is kept when an invalid value is sent.

Print PDF417 bar code

RS-232 Syntax:

GS P *data* NUL or X'1D50;*data*;00'

where:

data The ASCII representation of the characters to be printed.

Remarks:

Valid only at the beginning of a line. Printing will not start until a X'00' is received.

This command will increment status byte 6.

The maximum number of characters to be encoded is 1000.

Error Conditions:

If an image cannot be printed, status byte 7, bit 2 will be set. This may happen when the image is too big to print. Try decreasing the ECC level.

Select PDF417 ECC (error correction codewords) level

RS-232 Syntax:

GS R n or X'1D52; $n1$; $n2$ '

where:

n1	The high-order byte of the ECC level.
n2	The low-order byte of the ECC level.

Default: $n1 = 00$ $n2 = 15$ **Range:** $0 \leq n1n2 \leq 400$ decimal (170 hex)**Remarks:**

For $0 \leq n1n2 \leq 8$, the ECC level is assumed as that particular security level. The security level determines the number of error correction codewords added to the symbol.

Error Correction

Security Level	Codewords
0	0
1	2
2	6
3	14
4	30
5	62
6	126
7	254
8	510

For $9 \leq n1n2 \leq 400$, the ECC level is assumed as a percentage of the codewords in the bar code.

Select aspect ratio PDF417 bar code**RS-232 Syntax:**GS S $r;c$ or X'1D;53; $r;c$ '**where:**

r The height dimension for the ratio; $1 \leq r \leq 9$.

c The width dimension for the ratio; $1 \leq c \leq 9$.

Default: $r = 1, c = 2$ **Remarks:**

This is not an exact ratio. The image will get as close as possible to the ratio. However, the maximum width of an image is 12 columns and the maximum height is 90 rows.

Enable PDF417 truncation

RS-232 Syntax:

GS T *n* or X'1D;54;*n*'

where:

n Whether to enable truncation.

0 = Disable truncation.

1 = Enable truncation.

Default:

n = 0

Remarks:

Truncated PDF generates a symbol with the right row indicator and stop pattern replaced by a single width bar. There is a slight degradation in decode performance if truncation is enabled, which allows more data to fit in the image width.

Print character commands

These commands should be sent after ASCII data is sent to the printer and is being held in the print buffer. Any of these commands will increment the line count by 1. (See "Status byte 6" on page 167 and "Reset line count" on page 162.)

Print and line feed

RS-232 Syntax:

LF or X'0A'

Purpose:

Prints data in the print buffer and feeds the paper by a preset amount.

Print and line feed

RS-232 Syntax:

CR or X'0D'

Purpose:

Prints data in the print buffer and feeds the paper by a preset amount.

Remarks:

There is an MCT to enable or disable this command. The default is to disable or ignore the CR command.

Print, form feed, and cut the paper (FF)

RS-232 Syntax:

FF or X'0C'

Purpose:

Prints data in the print buffer and feeds the paper in the customer receipt (CR) station or document insert (DI) station by a preset amount, until the document exits the feed rollers. If a cutter is available at the station (CR station only), it cuts the paper.

Print and feed paper *n* lines

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC d *n* or X'1B64;*n*'

where:

n Specifies the number of line feeds.

Purpose:

Prints data in the print buffer and feeds the paper by the amount specified in this command.

Print and feed paper using minimum units

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC J *n* or X'1B4A;*n*'

where:

n Specifies the line feed steps.

In the receipt station: 1 in. = 204 steps (1 mm = 8 steps).

In the document portrait station: 1 in. = 51 steps (1 mm = 2 steps).

In the document landscape station: 1 in. = 127 steps (1 mm = 5 steps).

Purpose:

Prints data in the print buffer and feeds the paper by the amount specified in this command.

Print graphic messages

Select and print a graphics (logo) command

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC * *d w h data* or X'1B2A;*d;w;h;data*'

where:

d Dot density.

00 Normal Print - 200 dpi in the receipt station, 150 dpi in the document station.

Note: In the document station, this takes three passes of the printhead for a logo that is 8 dots high.

01 Double wide - 100 dpi in the receipt station, 75 dpi in the document station.

Note: In the document station, this takes one pass of the printhead for a logo that is 8 dots high.

02 Double wide and high - 100 dpi in the receipt station, 75 dpi in the document station. Every dot row in the vertical direction will be printed twice.

- w** One-eighth the number of dots in the horizontal direction, (width = $8 \times w$)
- range = 1 to 72 for a thermal logo.
- range = 1 to 59 for an impact logo.
- In the receipt station, 1 = 8 dots = 1 mm.
- In the document station, 6 = 48 dots = 1 inch.
- h** One-eighth the number of dots in the vertical direction, (height = $8 \times h$).
- range = 1 to 255 for a thermal logo.
- range = 1 to 5 for an impact logo.
- data** The data to form the graphics image.
- The number of data bytes for the image is $(h \times w) \times 8$. See "Download graphics (logo) Commands" on page 112 for an example of the data.

Purpose:

To print all-points-addressable print messages.

Remarks:

The margin will be ignored if this causes the logo to overrun the line length.

These messages can be positioned on the page using the commands for setting positions.

Not supported in document landscape mode.

This command supports 2 KB for Models TI1 and TI2, 8 KB for Models TI3, TI4, TG3, and TG4, and 16 KB for Model TI8. To print graphics on the printers when the data is greater:

1. Hold the buffer.
2. Send all the data.
3. Release the buffer.

Note: When the buffer is held, care must be taken to avoid exceeding the capacity of the printer memory. For all models except TI1 and TI2, buffer size is 16 KB.

The left margin will be rounded down to a factor of 8. For example, if the margin = 74, the logo starts at 72.

Retries are not attempted on print errors.

Valid at the beginning of the line only.

When printing in the document station, a line feed command must be sent to advance the paper past the last line of the logo.

If the parameter d , w , or h is out of the defined range for this command, the command is discarded and the remaining data is processed as print data.

This command will increment status byte 6.

If this message is printed on a regular basis, consider downloading it to save communication time. (See "Download graphics (logo) Commands" on page 112.)

The data buffer in the Model TI3 and Model TI4, which is 16 KB, can be used for signature capture.

Print predefined graphics (logo) command

RS-232 Syntax:

GS / *m logo#* or X'1D2F;m;logo#'

where:

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| m | The dot-density: |
| 00 | Normal Print - 200 dpi in the receipt station, 150 dpi in the document station. |
| | Note: In the document station, this takes three passes of the printhead for a logo that is 8 dots high. |
| 01 | Double wide - 100 dpi in the receipt station, 75 dpi in the document station. |
| | Note: In the document station, this takes one pass of the printhead for a logo that is 8 dots high. |
| 02 | Double wide and high - 100 dpi in the receipt station, 75 dpi in the document station. Every dot row in the vertical direction will be printed twice. |
| logo # | The number associated with the logo that is stored. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • range = 1 to 40 for all models except TI8 • range = 1 to 255 for Model TI8 |

Purpose:

To print predefined all-points-addressable print messages.

Remarks:

The margin is ignored if it causes the logo to overrun the line length. Printing this message in the document station at 150 dpi will take three passes of the printhead.

These messages can be positioned on the page using the commands for setting positions.

Valid at the beginning of the line only.

This command is not valid in landscape mode.

This command will increment status byte 6.

Retries will not be attempted on print errors.

In the document portrait station, a line feed command must be sent to advance the paper past the last line of the logo.

See "Download graphics (logo) Commands" on page 112.

Print predefined messages

RS-232 Syntax:

GS ^ *message#* or X'1D5E;*message#*'

where:

message#

The number associated with the stored predefined message.

- range = 1 to 25 for all models except TI8
- range = 1 to 25 for Model TI8

Purpose:

To print predefined print messages.

Remarks:

Valid at the beginning of the line only.

Retries will not be attempted on print errors.

Attention: Stored commands can increment status byte 6. See “Predefine messages” on page 114.

Miscellaneous commands

Tab to next tab stop

RS-232 Syntax:

HT or X'09'

Purpose:

Moves the print position to the next tab stop.

Remarks:

See “Set horizontal tab positions” on page 135.

Tabs are valid when printing is aligned to the left only. If the tabs are used when alignment is not left, results can be unpredictable. (See “Align positions” on page 137.)

Return home (select printhead location)

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC < *n* or X'1B3C;*n*'

where:

n	The print-head position:
00	Document home position
01	Open document throat position. On Models TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, and TG4, the DI station throat will automatically be closed if the CR station is exercised.
02	Reserved
03	Left home position
04	Refined document home position. This can be used to recover from a home error.

- 05 Register document
 - Close throat if open
 - Advance paper forward to first position
- 06-FF Reserved

Purpose:

To move the printhead to the desired location.

Remarks:

Valid at the beginning of the line only. Valid in impact print stations only.

Paper cut/DI eject

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC i or ESC m or X'1B69 or 1B;6D'

Purpose:

To cut the paper in the customer receipt (CR) station.

Remarks:

- This command is the equivalent of a form feed (0C) in the document insert (DI) station but does not feed the customer receipt in the CR station.
- ESC i or X'1B69' *does not* increment status byte 6.
- ESC m or X'1B6D' *does* increment status byte 6.

Generate drive pulse for cash drawer

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC p m n1 n2 or X'1B70;m;n1;n2'

where:

- m** The cash drawer number - 0 or 1.
- n1** Pulse width on time = (n1 × 2) milliseconds.
- n2** Pulse width off time = (n2 × 2) milliseconds.

Purpose:

To open one of the cash drawers attached to the printer.

Remarks:

Printing will be suspended while a cash drawer is being opened.

Retrieve the flash storage

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 4 n1 n2 or X'1B;34;n1;n2'

where:

- n1** One-byte count of the bytes to be returned
- n2** Three-byte address of the first byte to be returned

Purpose:

Retrieve data from user flash storage.

Remarks:

One byte will be returned if a byte count of X'00' is specified.

In many RS-485 printers, the number of bytes retrieved should be kept under 200 to ensure that the system's receive buffer is not overrun.

The valid address range for each SureMark depends on the model number and which memory option, if any, is installed. Use "Retrieve size of user flash storage" to determine the valid address range for your printer.

Retrieve size of user flash storage

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 4 x '08 FF FF FF' or X'1B;34;08;FF;FF;FF'

Purpose:

Retrieve the size of the user flash storage in the printer.

Remarks:

The size of the user flash storage will be returned in 8 bytes after the printer status bytes. The data will be in the form of ASCII decimal data.

Retrieve printer usage statistics

RS-232 Syntax:

X'1B 51 xx'

where:

xx The hex value of the requested statistic. See Table 18 on page 158.

Purpose:

To send printer usage statistics from the printer to the host.

Remarks:

- The usage statistics are sent over the serial line in status bytes 9 and 10. See Table 18 on page 158 for the values of parameter xx.

Use this procedure to retrieve printer usage statistics from the printer:

1. Reset the printer. (This is an optional step. It ensures that the most recent counts will be retrieved.)

RS-232 Syntax:

X'10 05 40'

2. Execute the Retrieve Printer Usage Statistics command.
3. Multiply the returned value by the factor given in Table 18 on page 158 to get the actual printer statistic.

Table 18. Retrievable usage data

Hex Value	Usage Data Being Tracked	Factor
80	FRU Card/Invalid usage numbers (set to X'0164' at the factory, not set for FRU logic cards)	N/A
81	Number of paper cuts	32
82	High byte of the number of characters printed on the CR (thermal) station (see note 1)	None
83	Low byte of the number of characters printed on the CR (thermal) station (see note 1)	None
84	Number of steps performed by the CR paper feed motor (200 steps per inch of paper)	50 000
85	Number of times the customer receipt cover was opened	None
86	Number of failed paper cuts – single-station printers only	None
87	Number of characters printed at the DI (impact) station – thermal/impact printers only (see note 1)	1 000
88	Number of steps performed by the DI paper feed motor – thermal/impact printers only	50 000
89	Number of DI transport motor starts – thermal/impact printers only	5 000
8A	Number of home errors – thermal/impact printers only	None
8B	Number of times the DI cover was opened – thermal/impact printers only	None
8C	Number of forms that were inserted into the DI station – thermal/impact printers only	100
8D	Number of MICR reads – Models TI4, TI8, and TG4 only	15
8E	Number of high-interference MICR reads – Models TI4 and TG4 only	8
8F	Number of failed MICR reads – Models TI4, TI8, and TG4 only	8
90	Number of check flips performed – Models TI4, TI8, and TG4 only	16
91	Number of check flip failures – Models TI4, TI8, and TG4 only	8
Note 1: The number of printed characters is based on the number of dots that were printed, assuming 64 dots per character.		

Check processing commands (Models TI2, TI4, TI8, and TG4 only)

This printer can process the check entirely without taking it from the printer. It can read the magnetic ink character line, frank the back of the check, and flip the check to print the face of the check.

Note: To print the face of the check, select the document station in landscape mode as the print station.

Model TI8 read commands

The Model TI8 has two MICR read commands. For standard check processing (those containing signatures or checks being processed as a standard paper check), use the X'1B49' command, which is the same as that used in the Model TI4

printer. For blank checks (no signature on the check) being processed through electronic check conversion, use the new MICR command X'1B3E01'. Both commands use the new OCR decoding algorithm for reading the MICR line, which is available on the Model TI8.

MICR read

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC I or X'1B49'

Purpose:

To read account information from the magnetic ink character line on customers' checks.

Remarks:

- Checks should be inserted upside-down from the front and against the right wall of the printer. The check can be, but does not have to be, registered in the printer before this command is given. The check will be fed, forward, until the bottom sensor is uncovered, then fed back for the MICR reader reading. After the reading is complete, the check is fed to the first print position.
- This command increments the line count (status byte 6).
- At the completion of this command, information read by the MICR reader is sent over the serial I/O following the eighth status byte.
- The next byte represents a percentage of an average signal level of the MICR characters for the E13b check only. (In CMC7, this byte is always 100.) A nominal signal has a strength of 100.
- Characters are sent as read from left to right, up to a maximum of 65 characters.
- If no magnetic ink characters are detected, a single question mark (X'3F') is sent back.
- If the printer is unable to read any character on its first try, it will feed the check forward and backward for a second try. Complete status will then be sent to the system - if the character was still not read it will be identified by a single question mark (X'3F').
- Checks with magnetic ink printing within 1.2 inches of the right edge of the check are not read correctly. This occurs when the amount field is printed on the check.
- The Model TI8 does not support the CMC7 check format.

Character	Description	ASCII Representation	hex value returned
MICR data representation			
0–9	Numerical data	0–9	30–39
	blank		20
	Unreadable Character	?	3F
E13-B - Special characters			
|||	Dash	-	2D
|:	Transit	T	54
||	On Us	A	41
|:	Amount	\$	24
CMC7 - Special characters			
|||||	Special character 1	a	61
|||||	Special character 2	b	62
|||||	Special character 3	c	63
|||||	Special character 4	d	64
|||||	Special character 5	e	65

Error Conditions:

Document feed error (status byte 7). This bit is set if the inserted check is too long. The maximum check length is 10 inches. The error is also set if the check does not clear the document sensor when expected.

Flip check

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 5 or X'1B35'

Purpose:

To flip the check after a MICR read. This will allow the face of the check to be printed.

Remarks:

- Set print station to document landscape mode to print the face of the check.
- This command takes 5 seconds to complete.
- This command increments the line count (status byte 6).
- If landscape is selected before a check flip is done, when the check flip is completed, the printer starts printing in landscape mode without measuring the document first.

Error Conditions:

Document feed error (status byte 7). This bit is set if the inserted check is too long. The maximum check length is 10 inches. The error is also set if the check does not clear the document sensor when expected.

Asynchronous (real-time) commands

These commands are processed as soon as they are received. They do not go into the printer buffer.

Note: These commands are not recognized when they occur in the middle of another command. For example, sending this command after the second byte of a 3-byte command, as in ESC J n.

Real-time requests

RS-232 Syntax:

DLE ENQ *m* or X'1005:n'

where:

- m** Specifies the ASCII command character
- n** Specifies the hexadecimal command character

m	n	Description
1	31	Release the print buffer for printing. This should be sent after an error has occurred and the print buffer is held. If an error occurred during the transaction that was being held, the printer sends back the line number with the error and the error status. The system can then decide to cancel or continue printing after the error is corrected. The system uses this command to continue printing after the error is corrected.
2	32	Cancel print buffer. This clears the print buffer of all data. In RS-232 mode, the user must wait for buffer empty status (status byte 2, bit 6) before sending any more commands. Note: A status message is returned immediately after execution of this command.
3	33	Undefined.
4	34	EC request - transmit printer status. Sends the printer's status to the system. This command does not go into the printer's data buffer but is processed immediately. The printer status is returned in status bytes 1–8. See "Status summary" on page 165 for more information. Status byte 5, bit 1, will be set after the EC request has been executed.
5-8	35-38	Undefined
@	40	Reset the printer. The printer stops what it is doing and goes through its reset routine. The print buffer is canceled and all commands erased. All printer settings go back to default values.
A	41	Enable unsolicited status. Note: A status message is returned immediately after execution of this command. To enable these status messages, the Status Sent to System setup command must be enabled. See "Status sent to system" on page 139.
B	42	Disable unsolicited status

m	n	Description
C	43	Disable transparent XON/XOFF

Purpose:

To process a command immediately.

Remarks:

Either the *Release print buffer* or the *Cancel print buffer* command must be used in these situations:

- When recovering from a cash receipt print error
- After clearing an unrecoverable home error

After the printer resets, it defaults to **not** sending status unless requested. If an error occurs, the printer appears hung, unless a status is requested. If unsolicited status is enabled, the printer sends the error to the system as soon as it occurs.

Note: If transparent XON/OFF is disabled, X'10', X'11', and X'13' can be imbedded in returned status and data. (See "XON/XOFF control" on page 31.) To re-enable the printer, the printer must be reset.

Data buffer management and batch printing

Reset line count

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 6 or X'1B36'

Purpose:

Resetting the line count lets the system track the print line where an error occurs.

Remarks:

The line count is incremented at every print command. The count is sent in every status message to the system. The count can go to 256 (X'FF'), when it rolls back to 0. (See "Print character commands" on page 151.)

Disable line count

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 8 *n* or X'1B;38'*n*

Purpose:

To temporarily not increment the line count. This can be used when printing predefined messages, if the number of lines embedded in the message is unknown.

Hold printing until buffer is released

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC 7 or X'1B37'

Purpose:

If the system cannot send data to the printer at a speed needed to keep the printer in constant motion, it can hold the printer queue until it sends all data lines for a transaction.

Remarks:

The printer must be printing one line while processing the next line. If the printer is unable to completely process a line, the print speed reduces to half.

The line count is reset when the buffer is held.

Document handling

To read checks, insert them from the front of the printer. Use the side load capability only for documents that must be positioned to begin printing at a particular location on the document. (There is an arrow on the side of the cover to indicate where printing begins.) Use front load for all other cases.

Portrait mode

This is a suggested way of document handling:

1. ESC f (x) (y): Set up document wait time

x Time the printer should wait from receiving a print line for the document station until the document is inserted.

If the document has not been detected by the time the wait time ends, a document error is sent to the system but the system continues to wait for a document to be inserted.

y Delay from the time the document is detected until it is *grabbed* by the printer (the start of document printing):

- Side insertion - closes the document throat.
- Front insertion - pulls the document into the printer and feeds it to the Top of Form.

2. ESC c 0 X'04': Select document station - normal print mode:

The document present indicator blinks until a document is detected, when it stays on continuously.

- If the document is inserted from the front, it is fed to the first print position after the document wait time. Then commands in the printer buffer begin executing.
- If the document is inserted from the side, printing starts at the location where it was inserted.

(The document throat must be open to insert the document from the side.) Manually, open the throat by pressing and then releasing both buttons. You can also open it with these commands - ESC q or ESC < X'01'.

If a document is not detected within the wait time (specified in the ESC f command), the printer sends error status to the system, and continues to wait.

Note: The system can either cancel the print buffer, thereby deleting all data in the print buffer, or wait for a document to be inserted.

The printer appears to be hung until an action is taken.

3. Send print lines to be printed in this station.

4. Final handling.

You have an option on final handling, finish printing and either eject the document or open the document throat to allow manual removal of the document:

4a. FF: Print and Eject Document.

Finish printing and eject the document.

4b. ESC q or ESC < X'01': Open Document Throat

Finish printing and release the document from the printer's rollers.

Note: The document station stays selected - the printer will wait for another document until the station is changed.

Landscape mode

Landscape mode printing is primarily for printing the face of a check.

Notes on landscape printing:

- Lines you send to print start at the bottom of the form, against the right stop, and continue to the top of the form, to a maximum of 80 mm from the bottom of the form. This is because the bottom of the form is known (against the right stop) and the top of the form is unknown to the printer.
- Different lengths of paper allow different print-line lengths. Therefore, the application must know the size of the print line.
- The printer calculates the length of a document it is to print. To do that, it must feed the document up past the bottom sensor and back to the top sensor. (On a 5-inch document this takes 2 seconds.) If a MICR read was done previously, the length was calculated at that time.
- When landscape mode is used without the check flipper, the document should be inserted so that the right edge is at the top of the printer, and the bottom edge is against the printer's right wall.
- To position the printing in landscape mode to the correct position, the system must send line feeds. The printer assumes that the top of form for a document in landscape mode is the far left edge of the document (to a maximum of 80 mm from the bottom of the form).
- Line feeding is 5 steps per mm or 21 steps per line, at 6 lpi.
- All landscape printing must be done with one printing pass. Therefore:
 - Double-high printing is not allowed.
 - User-defined characters greater than 9 dots high are not allowed.
- There is no error recovery for landscape printing.

Landscape printing commands

1. ESC f (x) (y): Set up document wait time

Same as for portrait mode.

2. ESC c 0 X'08': Select document station - landscape print mode:

- A** If the document was not previously loaded:
- The document present indicator blinks until a document is detected.
 - Once detected, the document will be *grabbed* by the printer and fed to the right margin on the document. Because the document is inserted on its side, this is at the top of the printer.
 - If a document is not detected within the wait time (specified in the ESC f command), the printer sends error status to the system, and continues to wait.
- The system can either cancel the print buffer, deleting all data in the print buffer, or wait for a document to be inserted.

The printer appears to be hung until an action is taken.

- B** If the document was previously loaded, the printer feeds the paper to the right margin on the document.

3. Send print lines to be printed in this station.

The number of characters that can be printed on a line depends on the width of the document. The print area is:

- 63 mm high, starting 17 mm from the bottom of the document
- The entire width of the document less 34 mm from the right edge and 10 mm from the left edge

4. Final handling.

You have an option on final handling, finish printing and either eject the document or open the document throat to allow manual removal of the document:

4a. FF: Print and Eject Document.

Finish printing and eject the document.

4b. ESC q or ESC < X'01': Open Document Throat

Finish printing and release the document from the printer's rollers.

Note: The document station stays selected. The printer will wait for another document until the station is changed.

Status summary

Status is sent to the system for:

- Cash receipt print error. The cover is open or out of paper.
- Printer buffer empty. If enabled, see "Status sent to system" on page 139.
- Document sensor state changed. If enabled, see "Status sent to system" on page 139.
- Cash drawer sensor change. If enabled, see "Status sent to system" on page 139.
- Command has timed out. The printer is waiting for additional bytes to complete the command.
- Nonrecoverable home error.
- Document not inserted after document station was selected.
- Document has exited sensor before document print is finished.
- Flash EPROM load error.
- Memory sector is full.
- Flash Storage is full.
- Printer ID request (extended address command).
- MICR read command.
- MCT read command.
- Flash read command.
- Print buffer being held.
- Ribbon cover sensor change.
- Document feed error.

Message from the printer

A message from the printer has this format:

Bytes Contents

- 1 - 2** Data count (X'000A' to X'00FF'). The data count includes the two data-count bytes.

- 3 - 10** Status bytes 1-8. See the descriptions of each byte in the sections that follow.
- 11 - *n*** Either 5 bytes of additional status from the “Extended address command—request printer ID” on page 109 command, or up to 246 bytes of user data that can include:
- MICR data
 - User flash data
 - MCT data

Status byte 1

Bit	Description
0 (LSB)	Command complete (immediate command and flash storage commands). Set to 1 when the command is complete, except for “Erase flash EPROM sector” on page 121, for which it is set to 1 when the command is sent. (See bit 7 of “Status byte 3” on page 167.)
1	Cash receipt right home position. Set to 1 when the printhead is in the customer receipt right home position.
2	Left home position Set to 1 when the printhead is in the left home position.
3	Document right home position. Set to 1 when the printhead is in the document right home position.
4	Reserved. Always 0.
5	Ribbon cover open. Set to 1 when the ribbon cover is open.
6	Cash receipt print error. Paper cover is open, the customer receipt station is out of paper, or the cutter is jammed in the closed position.
7 (MSB)	Command reject.

Status byte 2

Bit	Description
0 (LSB)	Document ready. Set to 0 when the document insert station is ready for printing. This occurs when both document sensors detect the document and the document has been fed to the first print position.
1	Document present under the front sensor. Set to 0 when a document is under the front document sensor.
2	Document present under the top sensor. Set to 0 when a document is under the top document sensor.
3	Reserved. Always equals 1.
4	Print buffer held. Set to 1 when the print buffer is being held. Cleared when buffer released.
5	Open throat position. Set to 1 when the printhead is in the open throat position.
6	Buffer empty. Set to 1 when no print data and no commands are in the buffer.
7 (MSB)	Buffer Full. Set when only 1K bytes are available in the buffer.

Status byte 3

Bit	Description
0 (LSB)	Memory sector is full.
1	Home error.
2	Document error. The document was not inserted after the document station was selected, and the wait subsequently timed out.
3	Flash EPROM load error or MCT load error.
4	Reserved. Always equals 0.
5	User flash storage sector is full.
6	Firmware error. CRC on the firmware failed. The printer is running out of the boot sector. Only system commands and firmware commands are accepted.
7 (MSB)	Command complete ("Erase flash EPROM sector" on page 121, "Flip check" on page 160, and whenever a physical line is printed). Set to 1 when the command is complete or a physical line is printed.

Status byte 4

Contains the printer engineering code (EC) level with all status messages.

Status byte 5

Bit	Description
0 (LSB)	Printer ID Request/Extended Address command. Set to 1 when responding to a Printer ID request.
1	EC Level. Set to 1 when responding to an EC level request.
2	MICR Read. Set to 1 when responding to a MICR read command.
3	MCT Read. Set to 1 when responding to an MCT read command.
4	User flash read. Set to 1 when responding to a flash read command.
5	Reserved. Defaults to 1.
6	Scan Complete. Set to 1 when scan completed successfully.
7 (MSB)	Set to 1 when responding to a "Retrieve scanned image" command.

Status byte 6

Contains the current line count.

Status byte 7

Bit	Description
0 (LSB)	Reserved.
1	Reserved
2	Reserved
3	Cash drawer status (0 if cash drawer status (port pin 3) at ground.
4	Print key pressed (1 = pressed).
5	Reserved. Defaults to 1.
6	Station selected. Set to 1 when document insert station is selected.
7 (MSB)	Document feed error. Set when there is an error after a MICR read command or a flip check command is executed.

Status byte 8

Reserved for future use.

Document scanner commands

Scanner commands are supported on Model T18 only.

Start scan

RS-485 syntax:

X'1B;3E;n'

RS-232 syntax:

X'1B;3E;n'

where:

n = **00** optical scan only

n = **01** scan and MICR/OCR read

Remarks:

- Pulls in document present at scanner input.
- Document image is retained in RAM until another scan command is received, or the printer is reset.
- Successful read returns status with status bytes 05 and 06 set, and a 2-byte image width, and a 2-byte image height (in hundredths of an inch) follows the status.
- When using the X'01' option, the MICR data is returned after the successful scan status, and matches the format in the MICR command section.
- If the scan is not successful, the Document feed error bit is returned (status byte 7, bit 7).
- When using the X'01' option, the bottom 1.5 in. of the document is not captured in the scanned image.

Print scanned image

RS-485 syntax:

X'1B;30;n1;x;y;dx;dy;s1;s2;n2'

RS-232 syntax:

X'1B;30;n1;x;y;dx;dy;s1;s2;n2'

where:

- n1* 2 bytes, reserved, X'00 00'
- x,y* 2 bytes each, top-left corner of area to be printed
- dx, dy* 2 bytes each, offset in the x and y direction respectively, to be included in the print area
- s1* 1 byte, percentage to scale image in the x direction (A value of 100 or 0 results in no scaling.)
- s2* 1 byte, percentage to scale image in the y direction (A value of 100 or 0 results in no scaling.)
- n2* print options, bit 0; value 0 = do not rotate, value 1 = rotate 90 degrees counterclockwise

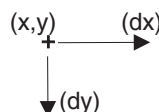


Figure 47. Scanned image layout

Remarks

Image location (*n1*) of 0 prints the most recently scanned image to the thermal station.

The top-left corner of the scanned document is used as the point of reference. All *x*, *dx*, *y*, and *dy*, values are based on 0.01 inch. The paper movement path is the *y* axis, and the scan head dot row is the *x* axis.

In all cases, *dx* and *dy* define the area's width to the right, and height down. If *dx* and *dy* extend the printer area further than the boundaries of the image, the value is truncated to the image boundary. If the size of the print area is greater than the thermal print head can print (either from image size or scaling), the image is truncated to the width of the print head. The only scaling options are 100% (no scaling) and 200% (double). Tag data included with the image is not printed.

Store scanned image

RS-485 syntax:

X'1B;41;n1;x0;y0;dx0;dy0;x1;y1;dx1;dy1;x2;y2;dx2;dy2;x3;y3;dx3;
dy3;tagdata'

RS-232 syntax:

X'1B;41;n1;x0;y0;dx0;dy0;x1;y1;dx1;dy1;x2;y2;dx2;dy2;x3;y3;dx3;
dy3;tagdata'

where:

n1 Select storage method, one byte

- X'00' store entire image
- X'01' store image using template 1
- X'02' store image using template 2
- X'03' store image using user defined values

x0, y0 2 bytes each, top-left corner of area to be stored

dx0, dy0

2 bytes each, offset in the x and y direction respectively, to be stored

x1, x2, x3, y1, y2, y3

2 bytes each, corresponding offset in the x and y direction to define size of subblock to store

tagdata

ASCII string terminated by null character, maximum 100 characters

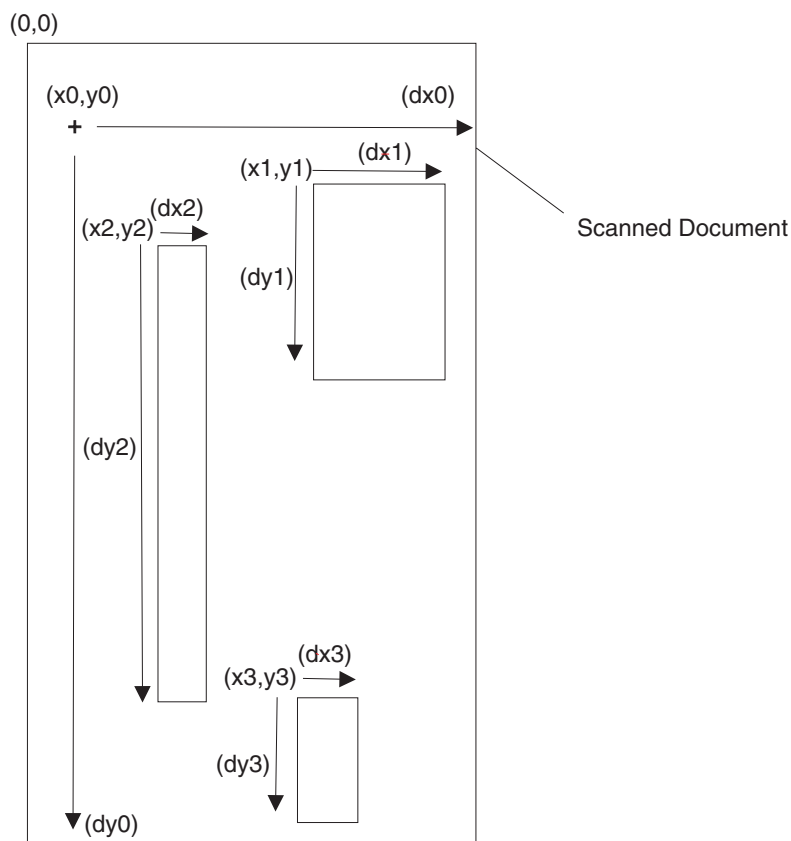


Figure 48. Scanned image organization

Remarks:

Images are stored sequentially. The locations where the images are stored are obtained with a *Retrieve next table location* command before issuing the *store* command. The image is compressed using the compression algorithm last selected by the *Select compression format* command, and is then stored in memory.

When storing an image, the user can elect to store the entire image within the defined area, or just selected blocks within the defined area. Saving selected blocks reduces storage use, but keeps related data together. When storing multiple blocks of data, each block gets a unique storage location. A byte in the header message indicates that the block is part of a group. The first half-byte indicates which block of the group it is, the second half-byte indicates the number of blocks in the group. If the byte returned is X'14', then the block is the first of a group of four. All blocks contain header information, but only the first block in a group contains tag data.

The Select storage method byte ($n1$) defines how the image should be stored.

When $n1 = 0$, all data defined by x_0, y_0, dx_0, dy_0 is stored. The command parameters, $x_1, x_2, x_3, y_1, y_2, y_3, dx_1, dx_2, dx_3$, and dy_1, dy_2, dy_3 should not be included.

When $n1 = 1$, a predefined template, based on a personal check is used to store the image. The area defined is the entire personal check, however the name/address and the MICR blocks are saved. The command parameters, $x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3, y_0, y_1, y_2, y_3, dx_0, dx_1, dx_2, dx_3$, and dy_0, dy_1, dy_2, dy_3

should not be included. These parameters are defined in MCT locations X'0xB0' through X'0xBF' and can be viewed or adjusted using the MCT Read and MCT Write commands. If fewer than four blocks are required, a block can be disabled by storing a value of X'FFFF' to a coordinate MCT location. The block is then ignored.

When $n1 = 2$, a predefined template, based on a business check is used to store the image. The area defined is the entire business check, however only the name/address, and MICR blocks are saved. The command parameters, $x0$, $x1$, $x2$, $x3$, $y0$, $y1$, $y2$, $y3$, $dx0$, $dx1$, $dx2$, $dx3$, and $dy0$, $dy1$, $dy2$, $dy3$ should not be included. These parameters are defined in MCT locations X'0xC0' through X'0xCF' and can be viewed or adjusted using the MCT Read and MCT Write commands. If fewer than four blocks are required, a block can be disabled by storing a value of X'FFFF' to a coordinate MCT location. The block is then ignored.

When $n1 = 3$, this method allows the user to define subblocks of data to store. All command parameters must be sent. If fewer than four blocks of data are to be saved, the value of X'FFFF' must be sent for unused parameters. The top-left corner of the scanned document is used as the point of reference. All xn , dxn , yn , and dyn values are based on 0.01 inch. The xn command parameters are horizontal offsets from the left side of the scanned document. The yn parameters are vertical offsets from the top of the scanned document. The dxn and dyn parameters define the width and height, respectively, of the defined area or block.

The printer attempts to determine the width and height of the document, and returns the value when the document is scanned. If the value of xn plus dxn is greater than the total width scanned by the printer, the printer uses the data detected up to the maximum scan width. If the value of yn plus dyn is greater than the length of the document, the printer uses blank (white) data to fill the area to the lesser of the $yn+dyn$ value, or maximum document length allowed.

If yn or xn is greater than the maximum allowed, the command is rejected. If $x1$ and $y2$ extend the printer area beyond the boundaries of the image, the values are truncated to the image boundary.

Errors:

Status byte 3 is set:

- When the image to be stored is larger than the remaining unused memory for the image boundary.
- If an error occurs during the flash write (hardware error).

Example 1:

Method 0: X'1B 41 00 00 19 00 32 01 13 02 26 30 33 2F 30 34 2F 30 32 20 30 30 31 2E 33 34 00'

An image 2.75 in. by 5.5 in. that begins 0.25 in. from the left side, and 0.5 in. from the top of the document is stored with the tag data: 03/04/02 001.34

Example 2:

Method 3: X'1B 41 03 00 AF 01 DB 00 28 00 64 00 B4 00 64 00 64 00 96 00 96 00 64 00 19 01 13 FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF 00'

Three separate areas are stored. No tag data is included. Table 19 on page 174 provides details.

Table 19. Data table

Document width = 3 in.	Document height = 6 in.
x0 = 1.75 in.	y0 = 4.25 in.
dx0 = 0.40 in.	dy0 = 1.0 in.
x1 = 1.80 in.	y1 = 1.0 in.
dx1 = 1.0 in.	dy1 = 1.50 in.
x2 = 1.50 in.	y2 = 1.0 in.
dx2 = 0.25 in.	dy2 = 2.75 in
x3 = not applicable	y3 = not applicable
dx3 = not applicable	dy3 = not applicable

Tag data, stored with the image, allows the user to include additional information about the image. It must be an ASCII string, terminated by a null character.

Retrieve scanned image

RS-485 syntax:

X'1B;39;n1;n2;n3'

RS-232 syntax:

X'1B;39;n1;n2;n3'

where:

- *n1*, 2 bytes, Image location to retrieve
- *n2*, 4 bytes, Offset into image from which to retrieve data
- *n3*, 2 bytes, Number of bytes to retrieve

Remarks:

Image location (*n1*) of 0 returns the image last scanned. Offset (*n2*) and size (*n3*) of 0 retrieve the header information for the specified image. When *n1* = 0, the header consists of the 12 data bytes and a null character for the tag data. In this case, only the Compression, Size1, and Size2 fields contain data. The header has the following format:

- Status; 1 byte
 - Bit 7, Image read; 1 = image has been read, 0 = image has not been read
 - Bits 6 – 0; Reserved
- Compression; 1 byte
 - Bits 7 – 3; Reserved
 - Bits 2 – 0; Algorithm used to compress image. See “Select compression format and scanned image threshold” on page 177 command
- Size1; 4 bytes
 - Number of bytes in image, not including tag data.
- Size2; 4 bytes (x1, y1)
 - Width of image in the x direction (in hundredths of inch increments), 2 bytes

Note: Scanner resolution is 200 dots per inch.

- Height of image in the y direction (in hundredths of inch increments), 2 bytes
- Block position; 1 byte
 - Lower four bits indicate the number of blocks that were saved for the image.
 - Upper four bits represent the current block number.
- Future; 1 byte
 - Reserved
- Tag data
 - ASCII data supplied by the application, terminated by a null string.

Offset (*n2*) = X'FF FF FF FF' with size (*n3*) = X'FF FF' sets to 0 the Image Read bit in the specified image header.

For stored images (*n1*>0), the image data format is the format that was active when the image was stored.

For immediate images ($n1=0$), the image data format is the currently selected format. If any parameter is out of range, Command Reject is returned.

Scanner calibration

RS-485 syntax:

X'1D 63 30'

RS-232 syntax:

GS c 0 or X'1D 63 30'

Purpose:

Used to initiate the calibration routine for the scanner in Model T18 printer. The printer scans the document multiple times and updates the printer's calibration data. See "Document scanner calibration (Model T18)" on page 59 for more information about the document to be used.

Retrieve next image location

RS-485 syntax:

X'1D 4E 01 00'

RS-232 syntax:

GS N SOH NULL or X'1D 4E 01 00'

Remarks:

Returns the table position where the next image is stored. Command is *Extend MCT Request* command (2-byte address). Status byte 5, bit 3 is set to indicate data is attached.

Retrieve first unread image location

RS-485 syntax:

X'1D 4E 01 01'

RS-232 syntax:

GS N SOH SOH or X'1D 4E 01 01'

Remarks:

Stored images are searched sequentially, and the first location that has not been set to "read" is returned. The command is *Extend MCT Request* (2-byte address). Status byte 5, bit 3 is set to indicate data is attached.

Select compression format and scanned image threshold

RS-485 syntax:

X'1B;4d;x;n1;n2'

RS-232 syntax:

X'1B;4d;x;n1;n2'

where:

- x = X'1F'
 - address to store data
- n1
 - 00 TIFF-CCIT-Group 4 compression
 - 01 JPEG compression
 - 02 BMP (uncompressed)
 - 03 No compression (gray scale)
 - 04 TIFF file, no compression (gray scale)
- n2
 - Lightens or darkens the contrast of a scanned image. Higher numbers print darker.

Remarks:

The current format applies to retrieval and storage of the currently scanned image. Changing the format does not change the format of any images already stored in flash. The setting is persistent across reset and power cycles.

Page mode printing commands

Select page mode

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B;4C'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC L or X'1B;4C'

Remarks:

- Enables page mode printing.
- Supported on thermal station only.
- Starting position is set by *Set printable area* X'1B;57..' and *Set print direction* X'1B;54..' commands.
- Inter-character spacing X'1B;20;n' and line spacing X'1B;31', X'1B;32', X'1B;33' commands are set independently for page mode and standard mode.
- The following commands are allowed:
 - Rotate characters
 - Set alignment
 - Set/Clear upside-down
 - Set margins

Select standard mode

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B; 4f'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC O or X'1B;4f'

Epson emulation syntax:

ESC S or X'1B;53'

Remarks:

- This command is effective in page mode only.
- Data buffered in page mode is cleared.
- This command sets the print position to the beginning of the line.

Select printable area

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B;58;x;y;dx;dy'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC X or X'1B;58;x;y;dx;dy'

where:

- *x, y*
 - Two-byte horizontal and vertical starting position (in dots)
- *dx, dy*
 - Two-byte horizontal and vertical printing area (in dots)

Remarks:

- When sent in standard mode, this command sets the printable area for page mode, but has no effect on standard mode printing.
- If the starting position (*x, y*) is outside the maximum range, the entire command is ignored.
- If the printing area is defined outside the maximum page size, the printing area is limited to the page size.
- Maximum page size is 576 dots in the horizontal direction, and 800 dots in the vertical direction (except TI-8, which is 1250 dots in the vertical direction).

Select printing direction/position

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B;54;n'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC T *n* or X'1B;54;n'

where:

n

Table 20. Print direction

<i>n</i> =	Direction / position
X'00'	Left to right / top left
X'01'	Bottom to top / bottom left
X'02'	Right to left / bottom right
X'03'	Top to bottom / top right

Remarks:

When sent in standard mode, this command sets the print direction for page mode, but has no effect on standard mode printing.

Starting position is within the printable area defined by the *Select printable area* command (X'1B;58...)'.

Set vertical position

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1D;24;y'

RS-232 Syntax:

GS \$ y or X'1D;24;y'

where:

y is a two-byte vertical printing position (in dots)

Remarks:

- Applies to page mode only.
- Moves the printing position to the specified dot position perpendicular to the printing direction specified by the *Select printing direction* command. If printing direction is bottom-to-top, or top-to-bottom, this command adjusts the printing position in the horizontal direction.
- If the value of y is outside the specified printable area, this command is ignored.

Set relative vertical position

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1D;5C;y'

RS-232 Syntax:

GS \ y or X'1D;5C;y'

where:

y is the two-byte vertical printing position (in dots).

Remarks:

- Applies to page mode only.
- Moves the printing position the specified number of dots from the current print position, in the direction perpendicular to the printing direction specified by the *Select printing direction/position* command (X'1B;54...'). If the print direction is bottom-to-top, or top-to-bottom, this command adjusts the printing position in the horizontal direction.
- If the value of y is outside the specified printable area defined by the *Select printable area* command, this command is ignored.

Set left margin position (standard mode), set absolute print position (page mode)

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B;24;n1;n2'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC \$ *n1 n2* or X'1B;24;n1;n2'

where:

- *n1* is the high-order byte of the dot offset from the beginning of the print line.
- *n2* is the low-order byte of the dot offset from the beginning of the print line.

Default:

n1 = 0, *n2* = 0

Remarks:

- In the thermal station, 1 mm = 8 dots.
- In the impact station, 1 inch = 150 half-dots (75 dots).
- *n1* and *n2* are hex values. Convert each to decimal, and use this formula to get the decimal equivalent: (*n1* x 256) + *n2*.
- The maximum value in the thermal CR station is 576. The maximum value in the impact DI station is 474.
- In the CR station, this number is rounded back to a factor of 8.
- If the *n1,n2* value exceeds the maximum, it is ignored.
- This command should be sent only after the command that selects the station, *Set print station* (ESC *c1 n*).
- In Page mode, the printing position is moved the specified number of dots from the beginning of the print line, in the same direction as printing, specified by the *Select printing direction/position* command (X'1B;54...'). If the print position is bottom-to-top, or top-to-bottom, this command adjusts the print position in the vertical direction.
- This is a one-time adjustment on the current line. If this command moves the print position outside the printable area specified by the *Select printable area* command, it is ignored.

Set relative horizontal position

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B;5C;n1;n2'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC <5C>h *n1 n2* or X'1B;5C;n1;n2'

where:

- *n1* is the high-order byte of the dot offset, relative to the left margin in standard mode or the current print position in page mode.
- *n2* is the low-order byte of the dot offset, relative to the left margin in standard mode or the current print position in page mode.

default:

n1 = 0, *n2* = 0

Remarks:

- In the thermal station, 1mm = 8 dots.
- In the impact station, 1 inch = 150 half-dots (75 dots).
- *n1* and *n2* are hex values. To get the decimal equivalent, convert each to decimal, and then use this formula: (*n1* x 256) + *n2*.
- To move the position to the left, use a negative number.
- If this number plus the left margin exceeds the printable area, the command is ignored.
- In the CR station, this number is rounded back to factor of 8. See the *Set left margin position* command for more information.
- When printing in page mode, this is a one-time adjustment on the current line. If this command moves the current print position outside the printable area defined by the *Select printable area* command, the command is ignored.

Set printing position

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1D;5D;x;y'

RS-232 Syntax:

GS] *x y* or X'1D;5D;x;y'

where:

- *x* is the two-byte horizontal position, with respect to the paper, regardless of printing direction.
- *y* is the two-byte vertical position, with respect to the paper, regardless of printing direction.

Remarks:

- This command allows complete control of the printing position with a single command.
- If either parameter is outside the printable area defined by the *Select printable area* command, the command is ignored.

Print and form feed and cut the paper

RS-485 Syntax:

X'0C'

RS-232 Syntax:

FF or X'0C'

Epson compatibility syntax:

FF or X'0C'

Remarks:

- In standard mode, the data in the print buffer feeds the paper in the CR station or DI station by a preset amount, until the document exits the feed rollers. If a cutter is available (CR station only), it cuts the paper.
- In page mode, the printer prints the page, then returns to standard mode. The page loaded in the printer's buffer is cleared. The paper is not cut.

Print page in page mode

RS-485 Syntax:

X'1B 0C'

RS-232 Syntax:

ESC FF or X'1B 0C'

Epson compatibility mode:

ESC FF or X'1B 0C'

Remarks:

- In standard mode, this command is ignored.
- In page mode, this command prints the page that is loaded in the printer. The page remains loaded in the printer's buffer and the printer remains in page mode. This should be used for repeatedly printing the same page, or if there is a template that is filled in with each printout.

Clear print data in page mode

RS-485 Syntax:

X'18'

RS-232 Syntax:

CAN or X'18'

Remarks:

This command deletes all print data in the current printable area of the page stored in the printer's buffer.

Appendix D. Uploading electronic journal data

This section describes the procedure for uploading electronic journal (EJ) data while the SureMark is in Model 4 emulation mode.

To put the SureMark into the mode for starting the EJ upload, the SureMark must receive a print command with a unique message. The message will include the line number where the upload should start. Because the starting line number is specified, if the printer is reset during the upload, the application will not have to restart from the beginning. The application can send a command to start at the last line that was sent.

When the EJ upload is enabled, all MICR commands will be interpreted as EJ upload.

The commands that are related to uploading EJ data, which are described in the sections that follow, are:

1. Enable the upload
2. Disable the upload
3. Upload the data
4. Request the size of the EJ space
5. Erase the EJ in the printer

Enable the upload of EJ data

Command Syntax:

X'010100010C'^EJ RQ *n1 n2*

where:

n1 The line number, which is specified as six decimal ASCII numbers.

n2 25 undefined bytes

Example:

X'010100010C'^EJ RQ 00405X'0000000000000000.....' or
X'010100010C5E454A205251203030303430450000000000.....'

Disable the upload of EJ data

Command Syntax:

X'010100010C'^EJ Disable *n1*

where:

n1 27 undefined bytes

Example:

X'010100010C5E454A204449.....'

Upload the EJ data

Command Syntax:

X'0117'

Remarks:

In response to this command, the printer will send four status bytes, then 43 bytes of print data, followed by the line number.

The line number will be sent as decimal ASCII numbers.

Request the size of the EJ space

Command Syntax:

X'0101xxxxx'^EJSize *n1*

where:

n1 30 undefined bytes

Example:

X'010100010C5E454A204449.....'

Remarks:

When the next MICR read command is sent after this command is sent, the SureMark will send the number of lines that are stored in the printer's memory. It will also send the total number of lines that can be stored in the printer's memory. The printer will then return to normal operation and process MICR commands as MICR commands.

Erase the EJ data in the printer

Command Syntax:

X'0101xxxxx'^EJERase *n1*

where:

n1 30 undefined bytes

Appendix E. Proportional fonts

This section describes the procedure for converting and downloading proportional fonts. It also gives recommendations that will simplify implementing proportional fonts on a receipt.

Preparing the fonts

Downloading proportional fonts to the SureMark is a 2-step process:

1. Convert a TrueType font to the SureMark proportional font format. Use the IBM Proportional Fonts Conversion Utility, fontconvert.exe, to convert the fonts. See “Proportional font conversion utility” on page 38.
2. Download the converted font file to the printer.

Implementing proportional fonts

The variable width of proportional fonts can make it difficult to layout a receipt using traditional methods. You can simplify the process of laying out the format of a receipt by using the alignment and tab features of the SureMark printer.

The following topics show how to use the alignment and tab features with proportional fonts. Command descriptions are given in RS-232 command format. For the command syntax when you use a printer driver, please consult the driver documentation.

A single proportional character set requires two user-defined code pages. Therefore, the printer allows the following combination of user-defined and proportional character sets to be stored in the printer.

Number of Proportional Character Sets	Number of User-Defined Character Sets
0	4
1	2
2	0

Selecting code page 2 when a proportional character set is defined for code page 1 (or selecting code page 4 when proportional characters are defined in code page 3) will result in unreadable characters being printed. See the Select Print Mode command (“Set print mode” on page 127) for more information on selecting code pages.

A proportional character set is enabled using the Select User-Defined Characters command. See “Select user-defined or resident character sets” on page 131.

Layout using align commands

A common requirement for receipt layout includes aligning item prices. This is commonly accomplished using fixed field lengths for item descriptions or counting characters. Using proportional fonts makes this method of alignment practically impossible.

The simplest method to align prices is to use the Align Column Right command (see “Align positions” on page 137) with the Fix Font Matrix command (see “Fix font matrix” on page 143).

- Unlike other Align Position commands, the Align Positions-Align Column Right command can be sent in the middle of a print line. Print characters sent before the alignment command will be left aligned, while characters sent after the alignment command will be right aligned.
- The Fix Font Matrix command forces proportional characters to print using a single width defined by the command. This essentially negates the proportional characteristic of the font, while still allowing the user to utilize the custom font.

The following sequence assumes proportional characters have been downloaded and selected for printing. The following sequence should be used for each item line. The printer output would resemble the following:

```
Candy Bar      $ .45
Fountain Soda  $ 1.11
```

1. Print the item description. For the first item, this is the ASCII data *Candy Bar*.
2. Issue the Set Alignment command with $n=4$ (Right Align Column). The command syntax is X'1B 61 04'.
3. Issue the Fix Font Matrix command with $n=\text{dot width of the widest number used}$. The command syntax is X'1B 3A xx'.

Note: Finding the optimum value of xx for this command will vary depending on the proportional character set being used, and may require some experimentation.

4. Print the item price. For the first item, this is the ASCII data *\$.45*.
5. Issue the Fix Font Matrix command with $n=0$, which disables the fixed font matrix. The command syntax is X'1B 3A 00'.
6. Issue the Print and Line Feed command. Use the command syntax X'0A' or X'0D'.

Layout using set tab position

There are situations where the customer might not want the price right aligned, or requires an additional column (for example, a column for quantity). In such a case, using tabs is the best method to guarantee alignment. Tab positions that you define during the set-up operation (see "Set horizontal tab positions" on page 135) will remain intact until the printer is reset or reinitialized. Once tabs are set-up, all that is required is to send a tab character X'09' to move to the next tab position. It is still recommended that the Fix Font Matrix be used, if alignment of the individual characters in a field is important (for example, to align the decimal points of prices).

The following Set Tab Positions command will define tab positions for 3 columns: item description, quantity and price. The command assumes that the font width is approximately 10 dots. This procedure assumes that proportional characters have been downloaded and selected for printing, and that the item description will be left aligned.

```
X'1B 44 01 90 01 D6 00 00'
```

The following sequence should be used for each item line. The printer output would resemble the following:

```
Candy Bar    03 $ 1.00
Fountain Soda 10 $11.10
```

1. Print the item description. For the first item, this is the ASCII data *Candy Bar*.
2. Issue the Tab command. The command syntax is X'09'.

3. Issue the Fix Font Matrix command with n =dot width of the widest number used. The command syntax is X'1B 3A xx'.

Note: Finding the optimum value of xx for this command will vary depending on the proportional character set being used, and may require some experimentation.

4. Print the quantity. For the first item, this is the ASCII data 03.
5. Issue the Tab command. The command syntax is X'09'.
6. Print the price. For the first item, this is the ASCII data \$1.00.
7. Issue the Fix Font Matrix command with $n=0$, which disables the fixed font matrix. The command syntax is X'1B 3A 00'.
8. Issue the Print and Line Feed command. Use the command syntax X'0A' or X'0D'.

Appendix F. Emulation support for Epson single-station printer

Commands supported in emulation mode	191
Commands with limited support in emulation mode	193
Commands not supported in emulation mode	194
Connectivity differences	194

The SureMark single-station printers in SBCS mode can emulate an Epson single-station printer. Emulation mode provides full support for most Epson commands. However, some commands are supported partially and a few commands are not supported at all. This section describes the commands that have each of the three levels of support and also lists the connectivity differences between an Epson single-station printer and the SureMark.

Note: Ensure that the dip switch on the printer is set to "Other", rather than "IBM".

Commands supported in emulation mode

The commands listed in Table 21 are supported in Epson emulation mode. However, there will be some differences in the printed output, because of different dot pitches in the print heads and the minimum distance that the paper feed motors can move the paper. These differences will appear when there are a number of printed lines, and the method of aligning the data is different.

Examples of the printed differences that might occur:

- Logos will appear smaller in emulation mode. The logo will still contain the same number of dots in the width and height. However, because the SureMark print head has a finer dot pitch, the logo will appear smaller. If text is aligned around the logo, the text on receipts that are printed in emulation mode might not line up the same as receipts that are printed on the Epson printer.
- If one line is aligned using spaces and another line is aligned using the relative position commands, the data might appear misaligned. The commands, such as the relative position and margin commands, that use the minimum unit of motion values are based on a fraction of an inch, which eliminates the differences in the dot pitch. Tabs and spaces are subject to pitch differences.

Table 21. Commands supported in Epson emulation mode

Hex Command	ASCII Command	Description
9	HT	Tab
0A	LF	Line feed
0C	FF	Print and return to standard mode
0D	CR	Print and carriage return
1B 20 n	ESC SP n	Set right-side character spacing
1B 21 n	ESC ! n	Select print mode
1B 24 nL nH	ESC \$ nL nH	Set absolute print position
1B 25 n	ESC % n	Select or cancel user-defined character set
1B 26 y c1 c2...	ESC & y c1 c2...	Define user-defined characters
1B 2A m nL nH dL..k	ESC * m nL nH dL...k	Select bit-image mode

Table 21. Commands supported in Epson emulation mode (continued)

Hex Command	ASCII Command	Description
1B 32	ESC 2	Select default line spacing
1B 33 n	ESC 3 n	Set line spacing
1B 3D n	ESC = n	Set peripheral device
1B 3F n	ESC ? n	Cancel user-defined characters
1B 40	ESC @	Initialize printer
1B 45 n	ESC E n	Turn emphasized mode on or off
1B 47 n	ESC G n	Turn double-strike mode on or off
1B 4A n	ESC J n	Print and feed paper
1B 52 n	ESC R n	Select an international character set
1B 53	ESC S	Select standard mode
1B 56 n	ESC V n	Turn 90° clockwise rotation mode on or off
1B 5C nL nH	ESC \ nL nH	Set relative print position
1B 61 n	ESC a n	Select alignment
1B 63 33 n	ESC c 3 n	Select paper sensor to output paper end signals
1B 63 35 n	ESC c 5 n	Enable or disable panel buttons
1B 64 n	ESC d n	Print and feed n lines
1B 70 m t1 t2	ESC p m t1 t2	Generate pulse
1B 7B n	ESC { n	Turn upside-down printing mode on or off
1C 67 32 m a1 a2 a3 a4...	FS g 2 m a1 a2 a3 a4...	Read from user NV memory
1C 70 n m	FS p n m	Print NV bit image
1D 21 n	GS ! n	Select character size
1D 2A xydl ...d(x*y*8)	GS * xydl ...d(x*y*8)	Define user-defined bit image
1D 2F m	GS / m	Print user-defined bit image
1D 3A	GS :	Start or end user-defined message
1D 42 n	GS B n	Turn white/black reverse printing mode
1D 48 n	GS H n	Select printing position for HRI characters
ID 49 n	GS I n	Transmit printer ID
ID 4C nL nH	GS L nL nH	Set left margin
1D 50 x y	GS P x y	Set horizontal and vertical motion units
1D 56 m n	GS V m n	Select cut mode and cut paper
ID 57 nL nH	GS nL nH	Set printing area width
1D 61 n	GS a n	Enable or disable automatic status back
1D 66 n	GS f n	Select font for HRI characters
1D 68 n	GS h n	Select bar code height
1D 72 n	GS r n	Transmit status

Commands with limited support in emulation mode

The commands listed in Table 22 are supported in a limited manner in Epson emulation mode. The table describes the limitation on each command.

Table 22. Commands with limited support in Epson emulation mode

Command		Description of Limitation
10 04 n	Real-time status transmission	A status byte will be returned when the command is sent. The following status bits will not be supported. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Offline status bit 6 • Error status bits 5 and 6 • Paper roll status bits 2 and 3 (near end of paper) - Bit will be set when out of paper
1B 2D n	Turn underline mode on/off	There is no thickness option available. A value of n=1, 2, 49 or 50 will enable underline mode.
1B 44 m1...nk 00	Set horizontal tab positions	The number of tab positions is limited to 5.
1B 63 34 n	Select paper sensor to stop printing	The command will be accepted, but it has no function. There is no paper low sensor on the SureMark. The printer will only return out of paper status.
1B 74 n	Select character code table	All characters on all code pages are not supported. The Katakana code page is not supported.
1D 5E r t m	Execute user-defined message	Does not support the mode where the user-defined message is printed when the paper advance button is pressed.
1D 77 n	Set bar code width	The maximum width is 4 dots on the SureMark. Widths of 5 and 6 will be forced to 4 dots.
1C 67 31 m a1 a2 a3 a4...	Write to user NV memory	If received during user-defined message definition, this command will be embedded in the NV memory. Epson will stop the definition and store the data in NV memory. The user is required to erase the NV memory before the address can be overwritten.
1C 71 n [xL xH yL yH...	Define NV bit image	The width is limited to 576 dots wide and 255 rows high.

Commands not supported in emulation mode

In Epson emulation mode, the SureMark printer supports all Epson commands except the page mode commands and smoothing. Table 23 lists the commands that are not supported.

Table 23. Commands not supported in Epson emulation mode

Hex Command	ASCII Command	Description of Limitation
18	CAN	Cancel print data in page mode
1B 0C	ESC FF	Print data in page mode
1B 4C	ESC L	Select page mode
1B 54 n	ESC T n	Select print direction in page mode
1B 57 xL xH yL yH ...	ESC W xL xH yL yH...	Set printing area in page mode
1D 24 nL nH	GS \$ nL nH	Set absolute vertical print position in page mode
1D 5C nL nH	GS \ nL nH	Set relative vertical print position in page mode
1D 62 n	GS b n	Turn smoothing mode on or off

Connectivity differences

The connectivity differences between an Epson single-station printer and the SureMark printers are:

- The Epson printer offers a parallel interface that the SureMark printer does not support.
- The following RS-232 modes of communication, which are supported by the Epson single-station printer, are not supported by the SureMark printer:
 - 2.4K and 4.8K baud
 - 7 bits of data
 - Parity
 - More than one stop bit
 - 25-pin D shell
- To attach the printer to a standard PC serial port:
 - The Epson single-station printer requires a Null Modem cable.
 - The SureMark requires a standard 9-pin D-shell RS-232 cable.

Appendix G. Notices

References in this publication to IBM products, programs, or services do not imply that IBM intends to make these available in all countries in which IBM operates. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only IBM's product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any of IBM's intellectual property rights may be used instead of the IBM product, program, or service. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, except those expressly designated by IBM, are the user's responsibility.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing,
IBM Corporation,
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

Note: Model T18 is marketed in the United States only.

Electronic emission notices

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. IBM is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Industry Canada Class A Emission Compliance Statement

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes d'Industrie Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

European Union (EU) Mark of Conformity Statement

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EU Council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility.

IBM cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a non-recommended modification of the product, including the fitting of non-IBM option cards.

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for Class A Information Technology Equipment according to CISPR 22/European Standard EN 55022. The limits for Class A equipment were derived for commercial and industrial environments to provide reasonable protection against interference with licensed communication equipment.

Attention: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit

Zulassungsbescheinigung laut dem Deutschen Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) vom 30. August 1995 (bzw. der EMC EG Richtlinie 89/336)

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt in Übereinstimmung mit dem Deutschen EMVG das EG-Konformitätszeichen - CE - zu führen.

Verantwortlich für die Konformitätserklärung nach Paragraph 5 des EMVG ist die

IBM Deutschland Informations systeme GmbH, 70548 Stuttgart.

Informationen in Hinsicht EMVG Paragraph 3 Abs. (2) 2:

Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 50082-1 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

EN 55022 Klasse A Geräte müssen mit folgendem Warnhinweis versehen werden:

"Warnung: dies ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A. Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funkstörungen verursachen; in diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Maßnahmen durchzuführen und dafür aufzukommen."

EN 50082-1 Hinweis:

"Wird dieses Gerät in einer industriellen Umgebung betrieben (wie in EN 50082-2 festgelegt), dann kann es dabei eventuell gestört werden. In solch einem Fall ist der Abstand bzw. die Abschirmung zu der industriellen Störquelle zu vergrößern."

Anmerkung:

Um die Einhaltung des EMVG sicherzustellen sind die Geräte, wie in den IBM Handbüchern angegeben, zu installieren und zu betreiben.

Japanese Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) Statement

This product is a Class A Information Technology Equipment and conforms to the standards set by the Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Technology Equipment (VCCI). In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づきクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

Korean Communications Statement

Please note that this device has been certified for business purposes with regard to electromagnetic interference. If you find this is not suitable for your use, you may exchange it for one of residential use.

A급 기기(업무용)

이 기기는 업무용으로 전자파적합등록을 받은 기기이오니 판매자 또는 이용자는 이점을 주의하시기 바라며, 만약 구입하였을 때에는 구입한 곳에서 가정용으로 교환하시기 바랍니다.

Chinese Class A warning statement

Attention: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

中华人民共和国“A类”警告声明

声 明

此为 A 级产品，在生活环境中，该产品可能会造成无线电干扰。在这种情况下，可能需要用户对其干扰采取切实可行的措施。

Taiwanese Class A Warning Statement

Warning: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user will be required to take adequate measures.

警告使用者：
這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

Australia / New Zealand Compliance Statement

Warning: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Trademarks

The following are trademarks of the IBM Corporation in the United States or other countries or both:

IBM
the IBM logo
SureMark
SureOne
SurePOS

Windows and Windows NT are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Java and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Index

Numerics

4610 fonts and logos utility diskette 38

A

align positions command 137
application requirements 14
asynchronous commands 161

B

bar code commands
 enable PDF417 truncation 151
 print bar code 145
 print PDF417 bar code 149
 select aspect ratio PDF417 bar code 150
 select bar code height 148
 select font for HRI 149
 select horizontal size of bar code 148
 select PDF417 ECC level 149
 select printing position of HRI 148
bar codes, supported 14
batch printing commands 162
baud rate selection, RS-232 29
baud rate selection, RS-232, Model TI8 32
BMP 4

C

calibration, document scanner 59
cancel high-quality print mode 130
cash drawer drive pulse command 156
cash drawer pin assignments 86
character fonts 94
check processing commands 158
check verification, printing 48
checks, clearing jams 55
cleaning
 MICR read head 57
 scanner 58
 thermal printhead (Model TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4) 58
 thermal printhead (Models TF6 and TM6) 73
clearing jams, DI station 55
code page command, set 131
code pages
 code page 437 90
 code page 858 91
 code page 860 92
 code page 863 93
 code page 865 94
 definitions 88
 generic 89
 resident 14
code pages, resident 14
commands, immediate 85

commands, RS-232
 asynchronous 161
 bar code commands 144
 batch printing 162
 check processing 158
 data buffer management 162
 document handling 163
 document scanner 169
 miscellaneous 155
 page mode printing 178
 preset 111
 print character 151
 print graphics (logo) command 152
 setup 127
 system 109
communication interfaces 9
communication mode selection
 RS-232 29, 32
 USB 33
consumable supplies 79
controls, printer
 Models TF6 and TM6 71
 Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4 47
conversion utility, proportional fonts 38

D

data buffer management commands 162
define document wait time command 138
dimensions, physical 9
disable feed buttons 140
disable line count 162
disable the beeper 141
disable upside-down printing 142
diskettes
 related x
disposal of equipment xviii
document format 4
document handling
 landscape mode 164
 portrait mode 163
document handling, landscape mode commands 164
document handling, portrait mode commands 163
document insert forms 80
document scanner calibration 59
double-high mode command, set or cancel 128
double-wide mode command, set or cancel 128
download graphics (logo) commands 112
download user-defined characters command 116
DTR and DSR
 control description 30, 32
 selection 29

E

EC request command 161
edition notice ii

- electronic emission notices 195
- electronic journal data, upload during emulation 185
- emphasized printing command, set or cancel 129
- emptying printer buffer 42
- emulate Epson single-station printer
 - commands with limited support 193
 - connectivity differences 194
 - enabling 43
 - fully-supported commands 191
 - limitations 44
 - overview 43
 - unsupported commands 194
- emulate model 3 or 4 printer
 - limitations 42
 - overview 41
 - upload electronic journal data 185
 - using utility diskettes 41
- emulation, Epson 191
- enable feed buttons 140
- enable the beeper 141
- enable upside-down printing 142
- end of life disposal xviii
- Epson emulation 191
- equipment disposal xviii
- erase flash EPROM sector command 121
- error recovery command, set 137
- exercise program 109
- extended address command 109

F

- features, all models 6
- fillers, installing
 - for RS-232/RS-485 printers 25
 - for USB printers 27
- firmware update image 40
- firmware, updating
 - firmware update diskette 39
 - limitation 41
 - methods 38
 - POSS for Windows 39
 - via RS-232 attachment 40
- fix font matrix 143
- flash memory
 - printing 42
 - usage 85
- flash storage
 - retrieve 156
 - retrieve size 157
- flash storage write command 120
- flip check command 160
- flippable document specifications 80
- fonts
 - character 94
 - impact printing 95
 - thermal printing 94
- fonts, character 94
- fonts, proportional 187
- forms, document insert, specifications 80

G

- general description 83
- generic code page 89

H

- hardware requirements 12
- height, all models 9
- hex dump, RS-232 66, 77
- hold printing command 162
- horizontal tabs command, set 135
- humidity requirements 9

I

- IBM Retail Store Solutions Web site 44
- immediate commands 85
- impact code page command 119
- indicators, printer
 - Models TF6 and TM6 71
 - Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4 47
- information, planning 8
- installation, single-station
 - power-on self-test, TF6 and TM6 75
 - problem determination, Models TF6 and TM6 78
 - testing, Models TF6 and TM6 75
- installation, thermal/impact
 - fillers for RS-232/RS-485 printers 25
 - fillers for USB printers 27
 - for RS-232/RS-485 communication 18
 - for USB communication 21
 - power-on self-test, Models TI1/TI2/TI3/TI4/TI8 61
 - preparation 17
 - problem determination, Models
 - TI1/TI2/TI3/TI4/TI8/TG3/TG4 66
 - testing, Models TI1/TI2/TI3/TI4 61
 - unpacking 17
- inter-character spacing command, set 132
- interfaces, communication 9
- introduction 3
- invert command, set or cancel 129

J

- JPEG 4

L

- landscape printing commands 164
- left margin command, set 136
- limitations 9
- line spacing, minimum units 134
- line spacing, select 1/6 133
- line spacing, select 1/8 133

M

- memory units 85
- MICR data parser sample code 44

MICR read
 head cleaning 57
 head cleaning cards 81
 read command 159
MICR reader and check flipper test 64
microcode tolerance (MCT)
 loading command 122
 request command 123, 126
miscellaneous RS-232 commands 155
model 3 or 4 printer, emulate
 limitations 42
 overview 41
 using utility diskettes 41
model comparison 7
multipart form specifications 80

N

notices
 electronic emission notices 195
 FCC statement 195
 safety information xi

O

offline test, single-station printer
 customer receipt 76
 reset printer 78
 test pattern 77
offline test, thermal/impact printer
 customer receipt test 62
 document insert test 62
 MICR reader and check flipper test 64
onetime-set commands 111
operating system requirements 13
overline mode command, set or cancel 129
overview 3

P

paper cut/DI eject command 156
paper width 83
paper, document insert, specifications 80
paper, select thermal 144
paper, thermal, specifications 79
parameters, serial RS-485 86
physical dimensions 9
pin assignments
 cash drawer connector 86
 RS-232 connector 86
 USB connector 87
planning information 8
power requirements 12
predefine messages command 114
preset commands 111
print and line feed command 151
print character commands 151
print head cleaning, thermal
 Models TF6 and TM6 73
 Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4 58
print head cleaning, thermal head 58

print logo inline 143
print mode command, set 127
print predefined graphics (logo) command 154
print scanned image command 170
print station command, set 131
print station parameters command, set 133
print width 83
printed copy of scanned check 65
printer, single-station
 indicators and controls 71
 operation 71
 paper loading 71
printer, thermal/impact
 check verification 48
 clearing jams, DI station 55
 indicators and controls 47
 installing for RS-232/RS-485 18
 installing for USB 21
 installing RS-232/RS-485 fillers 25
 installing USB fillers 27
 operation 47
 paper loading 53
 ribbon loading 51
 ribbon specifications 80
printing flash memory 42
printing saved data 42
problem determination, single-station printer
 customer receipt test 76
 symptoms 78
problem determination, thermal/impact printer
 customer receipt test 62
 symptoms 66
programming information 100
proportional font command 117
proportional fonts 187
 conversion utility 38
 implementing 187
 layout using alignment 187
 layout using tabs 188
publications
 CD-ROM book collection x
 Web site x
publications, related x

R

real-time commands 161
real-time status request command 161
reinitialize the printer command 139
related publications and diskettes x
relative position command, set 136
release print buffer command 161
request printer ID command 109
requirements
 application programs 14
 hardware 12
 humidity 9
 operating system 13
 power 12
 software 13
 temperature 9

- reset line count 162
- reset printer 161
- resetting the printer
 - Models TF6 and TM6 78
 - Models TI1, TI2, TI3, TI4, TI8, TG3, TG4 66
- resident code pages 14
- retrieve first unread image location command 176
- retrieve flash storage command 156
- retrieve next image location command 176
- retrieve printer usage statistics command 157
- retrieve scanned image command 175
- retrieve size of flash storage command 157
- ribbon loading 51
- ribbons, print 80
- rotated characters command, set or cancel 132
- RS-232 commands 100
 - 1/6-in. line spacing, select 133
 - 1/8-in. line spacing, select 133
 - align positions 137
 - asynchronous 161
 - bar code commands 144
 - enable PDF417 truncation 151
 - print bar code 145
 - print font, select HRI 149
 - print PDF417 bar code 149
 - print position, select HRI 148
 - select aspect ratio PDF417 bar code 150
 - select PDF417 ECC level 149
 - set bar code height 148
 - set bar code horizontal size 148
 - batch printing 162
 - cash drawer drive pulse 156
 - character for reprinted line, select 139
 - check processing 158
 - data buffer management 162
 - define document wait time 138
 - disable line count 162
 - document handling 163
 - document scanner 169
 - download graphics (logo) 112
 - download user-defined characters 116
 - EC request 161
 - emphasized printing, set or cancel 129
 - enable/disable the beeper 141
 - enable/disable upside-down printing 142
 - erase flash EPROM sector 121
 - exercise program 109
 - extended address command 109
 - feed buttons 140
 - feed minimum units 152
 - feed n lines 152
 - fix font matrix 143
 - flash storage write 120
 - flip check 160
 - form feed and cut 151
 - high-quality print mode 130
 - hold printing 162
 - impact code page 119
 - landscape printing 164
 - line feed, print 151
 - line spacing, minimum units 134

- RS-232 commands *(continued)*
 - MICR read 159
 - microcode tolerance, loading 122
 - microcode tolerance, request 123, 126
 - miscellaneous 155
 - onetime-set 111
 - page mode printing 178
 - paper cut/DI eject 156
 - predefine messages 114
 - preset 111
 - print and line feed 151
 - print character 151
 - print graphics (logo) command 152
 - print logo inline 143
 - print mode, set 127
 - print predefined logo 154
 - print predefined messages 155
 - printhead home position, select 155
 - proportional font 117
 - real-time 161
 - real-time status request 161
 - release print buffer 161
 - reset line count 162
 - retrieve flash storage 156
 - retrieve printer usage statistics 157
 - retrieve size of flash storage 157
 - RS-232 parameters 87
 - select character sets 131
 - select character size for scalable fonts 142
 - select color printing 134
 - select thermal paper 144
 - send checksum flash EPROM sector 121
 - send status to system 139
 - set code page 131
 - set error recovery 137
 - set horizontal tabs 135
 - set inter-character spacing 132
 - set left margin 136
 - set or cancel double-high mode 128
 - set or cancel double-wide mode 128
 - set or cancel invert 129
 - set or cancel overline mode 129
 - set or cancel rotated characters 132
 - set or cancel underline mode 129
 - set print station 131
 - set print station parameters 133
 - set relative position 136
 - set sheet eject length 135
 - setup 127
 - status bytes 166, 168
 - status request 109
 - status summary 165
 - system 109
 - tab to next tab stop 155
 - thermal code page 116
 - unidirectional printing, set or cancel 130
 - verify previous commands completed 109
- RS-232 communication mode selections 29, 32
- RS-232 pin assignments 86
- RS-485
 - parameters, serial 86

S

- safety notices xi
- saved data, printing 42
- scanned check printout 65
- scanned document format 4
- scanner
 - cleaning 58
- scanner calibration 59
- scanner calibration command 176
- scanner commands
 - print scanned image 170
 - retrieve first unread image location 176
 - retrieve next image location 176
 - retrieve scanned image 175
 - scanner calibration 176
 - select compression format and scanned image threshold 177
 - start scan 169
 - store scanned image 171
- scanner resolution 175
- select
 - 1/6-in. line spacing, select 133
 - 1/8-in. line spacing command 133
 - character for reprinted line command 139
 - character sets command 131
 - HRI (bar code) font 149
 - HRI (bar code) position 148
 - print graphics (logo) command 152
 - printhead home position command 155
- select character size for scalable fonts 142
- select color printing command 134
- select compression format and scanned image threshold command 177
- send checksum flash EPROM sector command 121
- send status to system command 139
- set high-quality print mode 130
- set horizontal tabs command 135
- setup
 - commands 127
- sheet eject length command, set 135
- single form specifications 80
- software adjustments
 - updating firmware 38
 - using POS Device Diagnostics 35
 - using reference/service diskette 36
- software requirements 13
- specifications
 - cash drawer pins 86
 - document insert forms 80
 - documents to be flipped 80
 - fonts 94
 - forms, single and multipart 80
 - memory 85
 - MICR read head cleaning cards 81
 - paper width 83
 - pitch 83
 - print ribbons 80
 - print width 83
 - RS-232 pins 86
 - RS-485 serial I/O 86
 - speed 83

- specifications (*continued*)
 - thermal paper 79
 - USB pins 87
- speed, print 83
- start scan command 169
- status
 - request 109
 - summary 165
- status bytes, RS-232 166
- status request command 109
- store scanned image command 171
- supplies, where to order 79

T

- tab to next tab stop command 155
- temperature requirements 9
- testing
 - Models TF6 and TM6 75
 - Models TI1/TI2/TI3/TI4/TI8 61
- thermal code page command 116
- thermal paper specifications 79
- thermal paper, select 144
- TIFF 4
- trademarks 198
- TrueType fonts conversion utility 38

U

- underline mode command, set or cancel 129
- unidirectional printing command, set or cancel 130
- unpacking the printer 17
- update firmware
 - firmware update diskette 39
 - limitation 41
 - methods 38
 - POSS for Windows 39
 - via RS-232 attachment 40
- upload electronic journal data during emulation 185
- USB communication mode 33
- USB pin assignments 87

V

- verify previous commands completed 109
- voltage conversion circuitry 85

W

- wall mounting feature, single-station printers 24
- warranty information, all models 5
- Web site, IBM Retail Store Solutions 44
- weight, all models 9
- where to order supplies 79

X

- XON and XOFF
 - control description 31, 32
 - selection 29

Readers' Comments — We'd Like to Hear from You

SureMark Printers
User's Guide

Publication No. GA27-4151-05

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this book?

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Overall satisfaction	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Accurate	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Complete	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to find	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Easy to understand	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Well organized	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Applicable to your tasks	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

Thank you for your responses. May we contact you? ☐ Yes ☐ No

When you send comments to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute your comments in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Name

Address

Company or Organization

Phone No.



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

IBM Corporation
Design and Information Development
Dept CJMA/Bldg. 645
P. O. Box 12195
Research Triangle Park, NC 27709-9990



Fold and Tape

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape



Part Number: 54P1733

August 24, 2004
Printed in USA

GA27-4151-05



(1P) P/N: 54P1733

